CITROËN
JUMPY-DISPATCH SPACETOURER

HANDBOOK

SCAN MY CITROËN

MY CITROËN

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Access to the Handbook

MOBILE APPLICATIONS

Install the **Scan MyCitroën** application (content available offline).

Also available in the **MyCitroën App** application.

ONLINE

View or download the handbook at the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/

Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle and body style,
- the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

Key

Safety warning

Additional information

Environmental protection feature

Left-hand drive vehicle

Right-hand drive vehicle

Location of equipment/button indicated using a black area

Identification

This allows you to identify the special features of the vehicle:

Van

Crew cab with manual child lock

Crew cab with electric child lock

Combi, Business, Feel, Shine, Business Lounge

Overview ■

Overview 4
Labels 5

Eco-driving ■

1 Dashboard instruments

Instrument Panel 9
Warning and indicator lamps 11
Indicators 16
Distance recorders 21
Lighting dimmer 22
Trip computer 22
Touch screen 24
Additional remotely operable functions (Electric) 26
Setting the date and time 26

2 Access

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key 28
Unlocking/Complete or selective unlocking 30
Back-up procedures 34
Central locking 37
Electric sliding side door(s) 38
General recommendations for the sliding side doors 39
Hands-free sliding side door(s) 42
Side-hinged rear doors 43
Tailgate 44
Tailgate rear screen 44
Alarm 45
Electric windows 47

3 Ease of use and comfort

Correct driving position 48
Front seats 48
2-seat front bench seat 50
Steering wheel adjustment 52
Mirrors 52
Moduwork 53
Precautions for the seats and bench seats 57
Fixed one-piece bench seat 57
Fixed rear seat and bench seat 59
Rear seat and bench seat on rails 61
Individual rear seat(s) on rails 63
Crew cab, fixed 65
Crew cab, folding 67
Interior fittings 68
Loading area fittings 71
Seating area fittings 72
Panoramic sunroof 74
Retractable sliding table 74
Heating and Ventilation 77
Heating 78
Manual air conditioning 78
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 79
Front demisting - defrosting 81
Demisting/de-icing the rear screen and/or the door mirrors 82
Rear heating - air conditioning 82
Additional heating/ventilation system 83
Temperature pre-conditioning (Electric) 85
Courtesy lamp(s) 86

4 Lighting and visibility

Lighting control stalk 88
Direction indicators 89
Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps 89
Automatic illumination of headlamps 89
Guide-me-home and welcome lighting 90
Automatic headlamp dipping 90
Headlamp beam height adjustment 92
Interior ambient lighting 92
Wiper control stalk 92
Automatic wipers 93
Changing a wiper blade 95

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 96
Hazard warning lamps 96
Emergency or assistance 97
Horn 99
Pedestrian horn (Electric) 99
Electronic stability control (ESC) 99
Advanced Grip Control 101
Seat belts 102
Airbags 106
Child seats 108
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 110
ISOFIX and i-Size child seats 118
i-Size child seats 130
Manual child lock 132
Electric child lock 133
Child lock on rear windows 133

6 Driving

Driving recommendations 134
Starting/switching off the engine 136
Manual parking brake 140
Electric parking brake 140
Hill start assist 142
6-speed manual gearbox 143

Gear shift indicator 144
Automatic gearbox 144
Drive selector (Electric) 147
Driving modes (Electric) 148
Stop & Start 149
Tyre under-inflation detection 150
Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations 152
Head-up display 153
Memorising speeds 154
Road signs recognition 155
Speed limiter 157
Cruise control - Specific recommendations 159
Cruise control 159
Adaptive cruise control 162
Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 165
Lane departure warning system 168
Distraction detection 169
Blind spot monitoring 170
Parking sensors 171
Top Rear Vision 173

Practical information 7
Compatibility of fuels 177
Refuelling 177
Diesel misfuel prevention 178
Charging system (Electric) 179
Charging the traction battery (Electric) 186
Energy economy mode 190
Snow chains 190
Towing device 191
Roof bars/Roof rack 191
Bonnet 192
Engine compartment 193
Checking levels 194
Checks 196
AdBlue® (BlueHDi) 198
Free-wheeling 200
Advice on care and maintenance 202

In the event of a breakdown 8
Warning triangle 204
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 204
Tool box 205
Temporary puncture repair kit 206
Spare wheel 209
Changing a bulb 213
Fuses 218
12 V battery / Accessory battery 218
Towing the vehicle 222

Technical data 9
Engine technical data and towed loads 225
Diesel engines 226
Electric motor 231
Dimensions 233
Identification markings 235

Bluetooth® audio system 10
First steps 237
Steering mounted controls 238
Menus 238
Radio 239
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 240
Media 241
Telephone 243
Frequently asked questions 246

MyCitroën Play 11
First steps 249
Steering mounted controls 250
Menus 251
Applications 252
Radio 252
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 254
Media 254
Telephone 256
Settings 259
Frequently asked questions 260

MyCitroën Drive 12
First steps 262
Steering mounted controls 263
Menus 263
Voice commands 265
Navigation 268
Connected navigation 271
Applications 273
Radio 276
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio 277
Media 277
Telephone 279
Settings 281
Frequently asked questions 283

Event data recorders 13

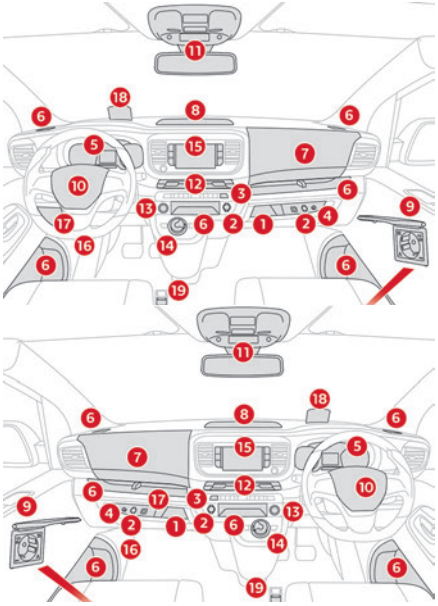
Alphabetical index ■

Appendix ■

Presentation

Instruments and controls

These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of some components varies according to the version or trim level.



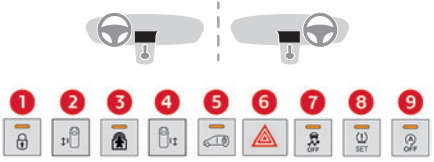
1. Glove box
   Deactivation of the front passenger airbag
2. 12 V (120 W) accessory sockets
3. USB socket
4. JACK socket
5. Instrument panel
6. Storage
   Cup/can holder
7. Storage compartment
8. Upper storage compartment
9. 220 V (120 W) accessory socket
10. Horn
11. Courtesy lamp
    Warning lamps display for seat belts and front passenger airbag
    Interior rear view mirror
    Monitoring mirror
    Emergency and assistance call buttons
12. Heating/Air conditioning
    Front demisting – de-icing
    Rear screen demisting – de-icing
13. "START/STOP" button
14. Gearbox or drive selector
    Choice of driving mode
15. Monochrome screen with audio system
    Touch screen
16. Bonnet release
17. Dashboard fuses
18. Head-up display
19. Electric parking brake

i Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the storage compartments may be open or closed. This configuration is shown as an example.

Steering-mounted controls

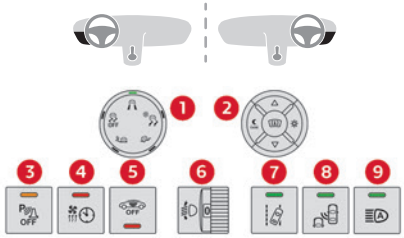
1. Exterior lighting/Direction indicators control stalks
2. Wiper controls/Screenwash/Trip computer
3. Audio system setting controls
4. Controls for Cruise control/Speed limiter/ Adaptive cruise control
5. Instrument panel display mode selection wheel
6. Voice synthesis control
   Volume adjustment
7. Audio system setting controls

Central control bar



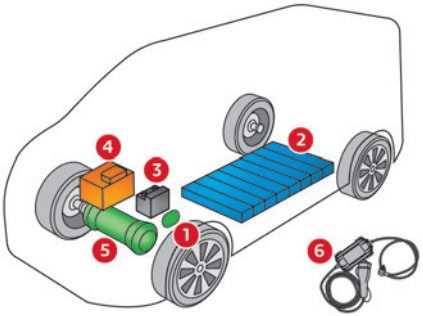
1. Locking/unlocking from the inside
2. Left-hand electric sliding side door
3. Electric child lock
4. Right-hand electric sliding side door
5. Cab/loading area selectivity
6. Hazard warning lamps
7. DSC/ASR system
8. Tyre under-inflation detection
9. Stop & Start (Diesel)

Side control bar



1. Advanced Grip Control
2. Head-up display
3. Parking sensors
4. Additional heating/ventilation system (Diesel)
5. Alarm (Diesel or Electric)
6. Headlamp beam height adjustment
7. Lane departure warning system
8. Blind spot monitoring system
9. Automatic headlamp dipping

Electric motor



1. Charging connectors
2. Traction battery
3. 12 V accessory battery
4. On-board charger
5. Electric motor
6. Charging cable

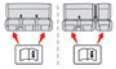
The charging connectors **1** allow 3 types of charging:
– Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable **6**.
– Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit (Wallbox).
– Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger.
The 400 V traction battery **2** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning lamp on the instrument panel.
The 12 V accessory battery **3** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.
The on-board charger **4** provides domestic charging (mode 2) and accelerated charging (mode 3) of the traction battery as well as recharging of the 12 V accessory battery.
The electric motor **5** provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

Labels

"Access - Side-hinged rear doors" section:

"Ease of use and comfort - Moduwork" section:

"Ease of use and comfort - Precautions for seats and bench seats" section:



"Ease of use and comfort - Retractable sliding table" section:

"Ease of use and comfort - Additional heating/ventilation" section:

"Safety - Deactivating the front passenger airbag" section:

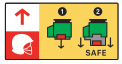
"Safety - ISOFIX child seats" section:

"Safety - Manual child lock" section:

"Driving - Electric parking brake" section:

"Practical information - Compatibility of fuels" section:

"Practical information - Charging system (Electric)" section:



"Practical information - Charging the traction battery (Electric)" section:

"Practical information - Bonnet" section:

"Practical information - Checking levels" section:

"In the event of a breakdown - Spare wheel" section:

"In the event of a breakdown - 12 V battery/ Accessory battery" section:

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.
With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO_2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Adapt your use of the headlamps and/or foglamps to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy. Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit summer tyres.

Comply with the servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
– before a long journey.
– at each change of season.
– after a long period out of use.
Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan.
Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system has a fault, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to legal levels.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.
You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

Optimising the driving range (Electric)

The vehicle's consumption of electrical energy greatly depends on the route, speed and driving style, as well as the use of the heating/air conditioning.
Try to remain in the "**ECO**" zone on the power indicator, by driving smoothly and maintaining a steady speed.
Anticipate the need to slow down, and brake smoothly, whenever possible using engine braking with the regenerative braking function, which will move the power indicator into the "**CHARGE**" zone.
Use the air conditioning rather than the heating to demist the passenger compartment.

Instrument panel

Speedometer

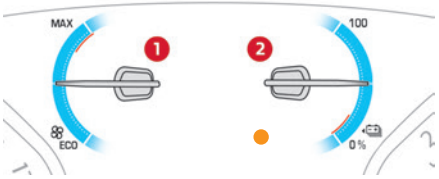
Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).

Indicators and displays

With LCD text or matrix display

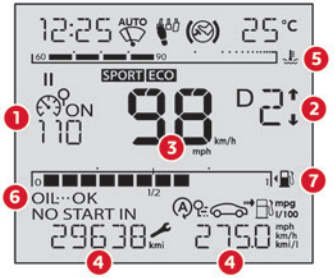
1. Fuel gauge
2. Engine coolant temperature indicator

With matrix display (Electric)

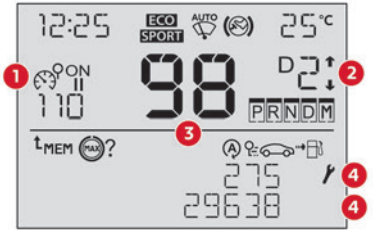


1. Thermal comfort consumption indicator
2. Charge level indicator

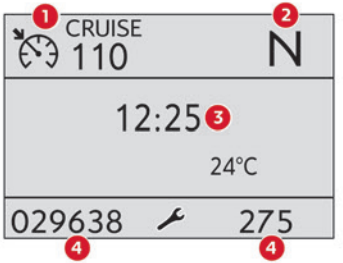
With LCD display



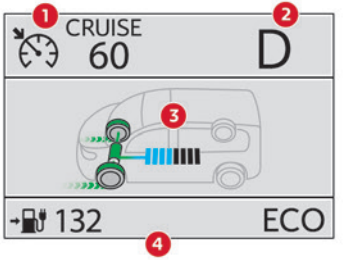
With LCD text display



With matrix display



With matrix display (Electric)



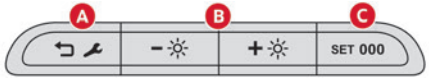
When travelling abroad, you may need to change the distance unit: the speed must be displayed in the country's official unit (mph or km/h). The unit is changed via the screen's configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings
   Display of speed limit signs
2. Gear shift indicator (Diesel)
   Gear with an automatic gearbox (Diesel) or Drive selector position (Electric)
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h) with LCD and LCD text instrument panel (Diesel)
   Display area with matrix instrument panel: alert or function status message, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), power flow/vehicle charge state (Electric), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km)
   Trip distance recorder (miles or km) (Diesel)
   Remaining range/Driving mode selected (Electric)
   Display area with LCD text instrument panel: alert or function status message, trip computer, etc.
5. Engine coolant temperature gauge
6. Engine oil level indicator
7. Fuel gauge

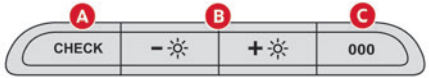
Control buttons

With LCD display

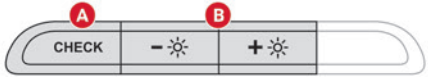
With LCD text display



With matrix display



With matrix display (Electric)



A. Resetting the service indicator.
Temporary reminder of servicing information.
Reminder of driving range with the AdBlue® system.
Depending on version: go back up a level or cancel the current operation.

B. General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: browse a menu or list, or change a value.

C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu (long press), confirm a choice (short press).

D. Reminder of servicing information or driving range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Resetting the selected function (service indicator or trip distance recorder).
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu (long press), confirm a choice (short press).

With the touch screen, it is also possible to adjust the lighting dimmer.

Rev counter

Rev counter (x 1000 rpm).

Power indicator (Electric)

Power indicator **CHARGE**, **ECO**, **POWER** or **NEUTRAL**.

For more information on the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding section.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Persistent warning lamp

If a red or orange warning lamp comes on, there may be fault which needs further investigation.

If a lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.
(1): **You must stop the vehicle**.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
(3): Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

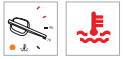
List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP

Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Maximum engine coolant temperature


Fixed (warning lamp or LED), with the needle in the red zone (depending on version).
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.
Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary (Diesel). If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Engine oil pressure

Fixed.
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

System malfunction (Electric)

Fixed.
A fault involving the electric motor or traction battery has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Cable connected (Electric)

Fixed when the ignition is switched on.
The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.
It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle’s connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

Battery charge

Fixed.
The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).
Clean and retighten the lugs. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened (depending on version).

Door open

Fixed, associated with a message indicating which access is open.
An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).
A door, the boot, the tailgate or the opening rear screen is still open (depending on version).
Close whichever access is open.
If your vehicle is equipped with a right-hand side-hinged door, this warning lamp will **not** indicate that it is open.

Electric parking brake

Fixed.
The electric parking brake is applied.
Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.
Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).
With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P**.
Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).

Manual parking brake

Fixed.
The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

Braking

Fixed.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.
Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Fixed.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Service

Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.
For other faults, such as with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the message **"Parking brake fault"**.
Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.
Carry out (2).

Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Fixed.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.
The vehicle retains conventional braking.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

AdBlue® (Euro 6.2/6.3)

On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).
Top up the AdBlue®.

Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).
Promptly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).
You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.
To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2).
It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi)

Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A malfunction of the SCR emissions control system has been detected.
This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.
Depending on the message displayed, it is possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.
Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.

Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.
The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (the permitted driving limit has been exceeded after confirmation of a malfunction of the emissions control system).
To start the engine, carry out (2).

Engine self-diagnosis system

Flashing.
The engine management system has a fault.
There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
Carry out (2) **without fail**.

Fixed.
The emission control system has a fault.
The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.
Carry out (3) quickly.

Fixed.
A minor engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (3).

Fixed.
A major engine fault has been detected.
Carry out (1) and then (2).

Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)

Fixed.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.
If automatic application/release is no longer possible:
► Start the engine.
► Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
► Release the control.
► Depress and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
► Release the control and the brake pedal.

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.
If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a fault with the control.
Carry out (2).

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:
► Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:
► Park on a level surface.
► With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
► With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select **P**, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.
Then carry out (2).

Braking

Fixed.
A minor fault with the braking system has been detected.
Drive carefully.
Carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake

Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Flashing.
DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.

Fixed.
The DSC/ASR system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake fault**".
Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.
If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

Hill start assist

Fixed, accompanied by the message "**Anti roll-back system fault**".
The system has a fault.
Carry out (3).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

Fixed.
The system is deactivated.
The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.

Under-inflation

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.
Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.

Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.
The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.
Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Engine preheating (Diesel)

Temporarily on
(up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions).
When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.

Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.
When the warning lamp goes off, starting will occur immediately if you press and hold:
– the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox.
– the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox.
If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

Front passenger airbag (ON)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is activated.
The control is in the "**ON**" position.
In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - Risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)

Fixed.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.
The control is set to the “**OFF**” position.
A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

Airbags

Fixed.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.
Carry out (3).

Low fuel level (Diesel)

Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
When it first comes on, there remains **less than 8 litres** of fuel in the tank.
Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, with increasing frequency as the fuel level decreases and approaches zero.
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.
Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Low traction battery level (Electric)

Fixed LED and needle in the red zone, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The state of charge of the traction battery is low.
View the remaining range.
Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

Tortoise mode with limited driving range (Electric)

Fixed.
The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.
The engine power gradually decreases.
You must put the vehicle on charge.
If the warning lamp remains lit, carry out (2).

Pedestrian horn (Electric)

Fixed.
Horn fault detected.
Carry out (3).

Water in Diesel fuel filter (Diesel)

Fixed (with LCD instrument panel).
The Diesel fuel filter contains water.
Carry out (2) without delay. Risk of damaging the fuel injection system!

Particle filter (Diesel)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.
The particle filter is nearing saturation.
As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), with an engine speed of above 2,500 rpm, until the warning lamp goes off.

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.
The low level in the additive tank has been reached.
Top up without delay: carry out (3).

Power steering

Fixed.
The power steering has a fault.
Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Rear foglamp

Fixed.
The lamp is on.

Foot on the brake

Fixed.
Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.

With the automatic gearbox or the drive selector, it may be necessary to depress the brake pedal to unlock the gearbox from mode **N**.

Foot on the clutch

Fixed.
Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.
Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Automatic wiping

Fixed.
Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.

Automatic headlamp dipping

Fixed.
The function has been activated via the vehicle's configuration menu.
The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.
For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.

Stop & Start

Fixed.
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.

Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Vehicle ready to drive (Electric)

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.
The vehicle is ready to drive and the thermal comfort systems are available.
The indicator lamp goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving.
The lamp will go out when you switch off the motor and exit the vehicle.

Blind spot monitoring

Fixed.
The function has been activated.

Lane departure warning system

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.
A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.
Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory.
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

Fixed, accompanied by an onscreen message.
The system has a fault.
Stay alert and drive carefully, then carry out (3).

Direction indicators

Flashing with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Sidelamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Dipped beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Front foglamps

Fixed.
The front foglamps are on.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Black/white warning lamps

Foot on the brake

Fixed.
Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.
With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**.

Indicators

Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed on the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:
– the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign "-".

– an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

Service spanner

On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.
Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.

Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).
Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

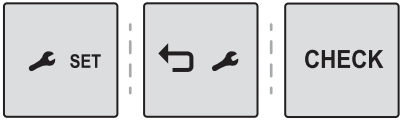
Service spanner flashing

Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.
(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, associated with the Service warning lamp.)
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

► Switch the ignition off.



► Press and hold this button.

► Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown.

► Release the button when **=0** is displayed; the spanner disappears.

> If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

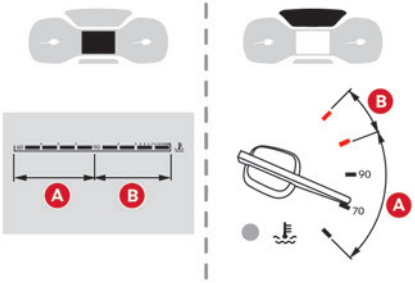
The service information can be accessed at any time.

► Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

> The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
> The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

Coolant temperature indicator (Diesel)



With the engine running:
– In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.
– In zone **B**, the temperature is too high.
The associated warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

> After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

> For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.
To top up the level:
► wait at least one hour for the engine to cool,
► unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
► when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
► top up the level to the "MAX" mark.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Be aware of the risk of scalding when topping up the coolant. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel.

Low oil level

This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel.
If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil gauge malfunction

This is indicated by the display of a message on the instrument panel.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

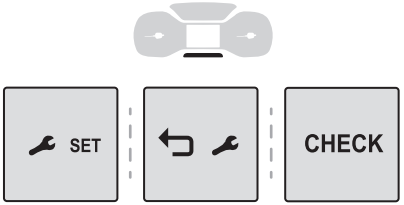
AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.
When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of driving range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.



► Press this button to temporarily display the driving range.

With touch screen

You can view the range information in the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is below the reserve level: driving range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km). Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)** and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

With BlueHDi (Euro 6.2/6.3) engines

Warning/ indicator lamps on	Action	Remaining range
AdBlue	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
AdBlue	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
AdBlue	**A top-up is vital**, there is a risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
AdBlue	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

AdBlue	If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an "**Emissions control fault**" or "**NO START IN**" message.

The alert is triggered while driving when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, for as long as the cause of the fault persists.

If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed.
The AdBlue warning lamp flashes and a message is displayed ("**Emissions control fault: starting prevented in X miles (kms)**" or "**NO START IN X miles (kms)**"),

indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.
While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

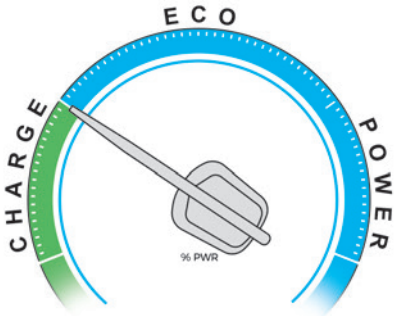
! Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Starting prevented

Every time the ignition is switched on, the message "**Emissions control fault: Starting prevented**" or "**NO START IN**" is displayed.

! **To restart the engine**
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

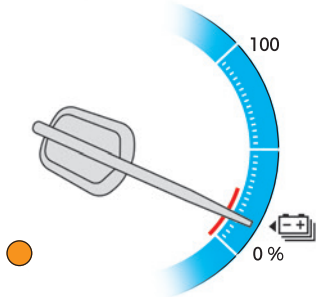
Power indicator (Electric)



CHARGE
Traction battery charging during deceleration and braking.
ECO
Moderate energy consumption and optimised driving range.
POWER
Energy consumption by the drive train during acceleration.
NEUTRAL
When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's electric drive train neither consumes nor generates energy; after sweeping over the indicator, the needle returns to its "neutral" position: between ECO and CHARGE.

i With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator, which moves to the "neutral" position: between ECO and CHARGE.

Charge level indicator (Electric)



The traction battery's actual charge level and the remaining range are displayed continuously when the vehicle is started.

i With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator.

Associated warning lamps

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level:
1st level: Reserve

The state of charge of the traction battery is low.

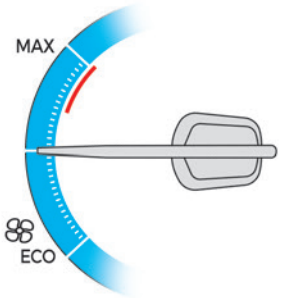
Fixed LED and needle in the red zone, accompanied by an audible signal.
► View the remaining range on the instrument panel.
► Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

2nd level: Critical

The state of charge of the traction battery is critical.
Fixed, together with the reserve LED, accompanied by an audible signal.
► You must put the vehicle on charge.

! The remaining range is no longer calculated. The drive train power gradually decreases.
The heating and air conditioning are switched off (even if the needle indicating their consumption is not at the "**ECO**" position).

Thermal comfort consumption indicator (Electric)



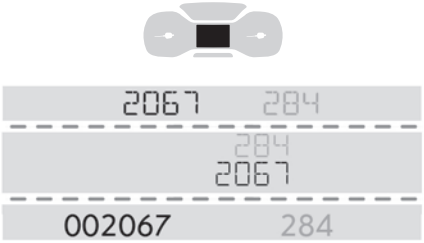
The gauge shows the consumption of the traction battery's electrical energy by the thermal comfort devices in the passenger compartment. The devices in question are the heating and air conditioning systems.
This equipment can be used:
– If the vehicle is not plugged in, when the **READY** lamp is lit.
– If the vehicle is plugged in, when the ignition is switched on ("Lounge" mode).
Selecting **ECO** mode limits the performance of some of this equipment. The needle on the thermal comfort consumption indicator then moves into the "**ECO**" zone.

i To quickly heat or cool the passenger compartment, feel free to temporarily select the maximum heating or cooling setting.
When the heating is on maximum, the gauge on the thermal comfort consumption indicator is in the **MAX** zone. When the air conditioning is on maximum, it stays in the **ECO** zone.
Excessive use of thermal comfort equipment, particularly at low speed, can significantly decrease the vehicle's range.
Remember to optimise equipment settings upon achieving the desired level of comfort, and adjust them if necessary whenever you start the vehicle.
After an extended period without using the heating, you may notice a slight odour during the first few minutes of use.

Distance recorders

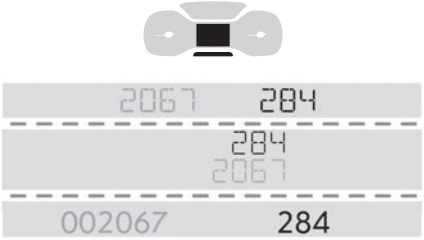
The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder



This measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

Trip distance recorder (Diesel)



This measures the distance travelled since it was last reset by the driver.

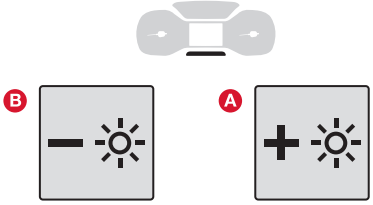
Resetting the trip recorder

► With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted manually to suit the ambient light level.

With buttons



With the lamps on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the lighting, or button **B** to decrease it.

Release the button when the desired brightness is reached.

With touch screen

► In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**" or "**OPTIONS**", "**Screen configuration**" then "**Brightness**".

► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

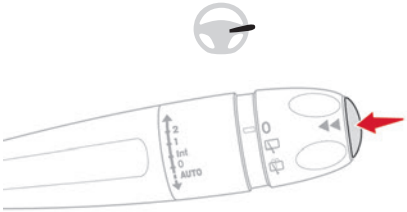
> The brightness can be set differently for day mode and night mode.

Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Information display

To display the various trip computer tabs in turn:

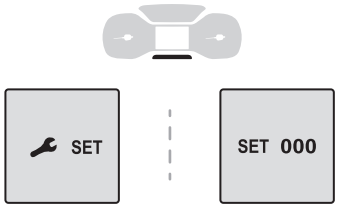


► Press the button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.

With steering-mounted controls

► Press the knob on the **steering wheel**.

On the instrument panel



► Press this button.

The following current information is shown in turn:

– Driving range (Diesel).

– Current consumption.

– Stop & Start time counter (Diesel).

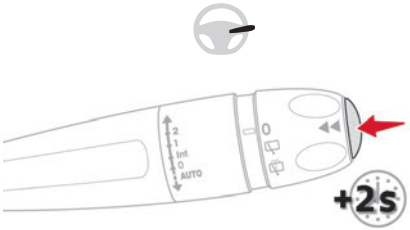
– Trip "**1**" followed by (depending on version) trip "**2**" including average speed, average consumption and distance travelled for each trip.

Trips "**1**" and "**2**" are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip "**1**" can be used for daily figures and trip "**2**" for monthly figures.

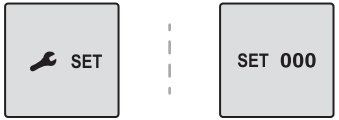
Trip reset

The reset is performed when the trip counter is displayed.



► Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.

► Press the knob on the **steering wheel** for more than two seconds.



► Press this button for more than 2 seconds.

Definitions

Range

(miles or km)

(Traction battery charge level percentage)

(Electric)

Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
(miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (Electric)
l/100 / Calculated during the last few seconds.
This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h) (Diesel).

Average consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
(miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (Electric)
l/100 / Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

ECO (minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)
If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

Touch screen

This system gives access to the following elements:
– Permanent display of the time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).
– Vehicle functions and equipment setting menus.
– Audio system and telephone controls and display of related information.
– Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions
– Internet services and display of related information.
– Navigation system controls and display of related information (depending on version).

! For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention.
Some functions are not accessible while driving.

Recommendations

This screen uses capacitive sensing technology.
– Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
– Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
– Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

► Use the buttons on each side of the touch screen to access the menus, then press the buttons that appear on the touch screen.
Some menus may display across two pages: press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select "**OFF**" or "**ON**".

	Configuring a function
	Access to additional information on the function
OK	Confirm
←	Return to the previous page or confirm

Menus

Press the touch screen with three fingers to show all of the menu buttons.

For more information about the menus, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

Radio/Media

Navigation (Depending on equipment)

Driving or Vehicle (Depending on equipment)

Activation, deactivation and settings for certain functions.

The functions are organised in 2 tabs: "**Driving functions**" and "**Vehicle settings**".

Telephone

Applications

Display of available connected services.

Energy

Access the specific Electric functions (energy flow, consumption statistics, deferred charge) organised in the corresponding 3 tabs.

or

Settings

Main settings for the audio system and touch screen.

Audio system on/off

Volume adjustment/mute

Upper bar

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

– Time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).

– Reminder of information from the **RadioMedia** and **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions (depending on equipment).

– Notifications.

– Access to the **Settings**.

Energy menu (Electric)

This menu is only available with MyCitroën Drive.

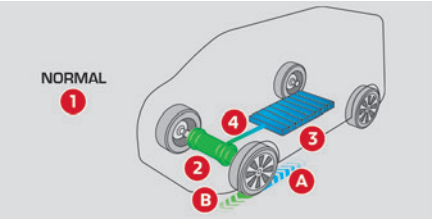
Depending on version, this is accessible either:

– directly, by pressing the button near the touch screen.

– via the **Applications** menu.

Flow

The page displays a real-time representation of the electric drive train's operation.



1. Active driving mode
2. Electric motor
3. Estimated traction battery charge level
4. Energy flows

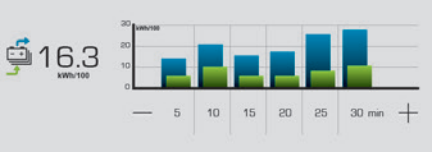
The energy flows have a specific colour for each type of driving:

A. Blue: energy consumption

B. Green: energy recovery

Statistics

This page shows electrical energy consumption statistics.



– Blue bar chart: directly consumed energy supplied by the traction battery.

– Green bar chart: energy recovered during deceleration and braking, used to recharge the battery.

The average result for the current trip is stated in kWh/100 km.
► You can change the displayed time scale by pressing the **-** or **+** buttons.

> i A current trip is any trip of more than 20 minutes without switching off the ignition.

Charging

This page allows you to programme deferred charging.
For more information on **Charging the traction battery (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Additional remotely operable functions (Electric)

(Depending on country of sale)

Download on the App Store | GET IT ON Google Play

The following functions are available from the **MyCitroën App** application, which is accessible from a smartphone:

– Managing the traction battery charging (deferred charging).
– Managing the temperature pre-conditioning.
– Viewing the state of charge and range of the vehicle.

Installation procedure

► Download the **MyCitroën App** application from the appropriate online store for your smartphone.
► Create an account.
► Enter the vehicle's VIN (code beginning with "VF" on the vehicle registration certificate).
For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

> i **Network coverage**
> In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network.
> A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park). In such cases, the application will display a message indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

Setting the date and time

With audio system

► Press the **MENU** button for access to the **main menu**.
► Press the "◄◄" or "►►" button to select the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
► Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the **Display configuration** menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK**button.
► Press the "▲" or "▼" and "◄◄" or "►►" buttons to adjust the date and time values, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.

With MyCitroën Play

► Select the **Settings** menu in the upper banner of the touch screen.
► Select "**Configuration**".
► Select "**Date and time**".
► Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
► Choose the display formats.
► Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
► Confirm with "**OK**".

With MyCitroën Drive

Time and date settings are only available if GPS synchronisation is deactivated.

► Select the **Settings** menu in the banner of the touch screen.
► Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
► Select "**Setting the time-date**".
► Select the "**Date:**" or "**Time**" tab.
► Set the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
► Confirm with "**OK**".

Additional settings

You can choose:
– To change the time zone.
– To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
– To activate or deactivate the summer time management function (+1 hour).
– To activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

i The system does not automatically change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key

Advice

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Start system has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

Automatic door mirror folding and unfolding can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you.
Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

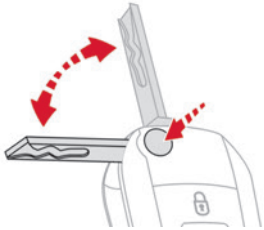
If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged rear doors):
– when the vehicle is stationary and engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a warning message for a few seconds,
– when the vehicle is moving (at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message for a few seconds.

Remote control key

This allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance.
It also allows the vehicle to be located, the fuel filler cap and charging flap to be opened and closed and the engine to be started or switched off, as well as providing protection against theft.

The remote control buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

Unfolding / Folding the key



► Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

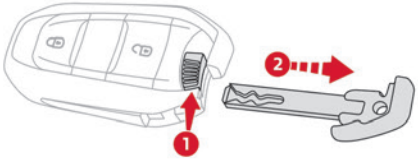
The remote control may be damaged if you do not press the button.

Keyless Entry and Start

This allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle from a distance.
It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Integral key

This is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the remote control cannot operate:
– cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, etc.
– vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.

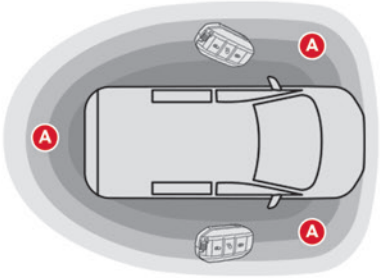


► Keep this button **1** pulled while removing key **2** from the housing.

ℹ If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.

! Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

"Keyless Entry and Start" on your person



It allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while carrying the remote control on your person in recognition zone "**A**".

ℹ In the ignition on (accessories) position, with the "START/STOP" button, the hands-free function is deactivated and it is impossible to open the doors.
For more information on **Starting/switching off the engine, Keyless Entry and Start** and in particular the "ignition on" position, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating the vehicle

This function helps you to spot your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked:
– The direction indicators flash for approximately 10 seconds.
– The courtesy lamps come on.

► Press this button.

Remote operation of lighting

If fitted to the vehicle.

A short press on this button switches on the lighting remotely (lighting of sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).
A second press on the button before the end of the timed period cancels the remote lighting.

Advice

! **Remote control**
The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.
The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

! **Anti-theft protection**
Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.
For vehicles with a key ignition switch, remember to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

! **Locking the vehicle**
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

To preserve the battery charge in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are set to hibernation mode after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with the Keyless Entry and Start system, refer to the corresponding section.

Electrical interference
The electronic key may not work if it is close to an electronic device (e.g. mobile telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields). If this occurs, move the electronic key away from the electronic device.

Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Unlocking/Complete or selective unlocking

What is the purpose of total or selective unlocking?

Total unlocking unlocks **all** the vehicle's doors (front, side and rear).

Selective unlocking unlocks either the **cab** doors, or the doors of the **loading area** (side and rear).

The separated unlocking system between **cab** and **loading area** is a security measure. This prevents access to the part of the vehicle where the driver is not present.

Activation/Deactivation

► To **activateselective** unlocking between the **cab** and the **loading area** or to **deactivate** selective unlocking and return to **total** unlocking mode, switch on the ignition and press this button for more than two seconds.
An audible signal and, depending on equipment, a display message, confirm that the request has been acknowledged.

Selective unlocking between **cab** and **loading area** is activated by default.

Unlocking/Complete unlocking

Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

With the key

► To unlock the vehicle **fully**, turn the key in the front left-hand door lock towards the front of the vehicle.
If the vehicle has an alarm, it will not be deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

With the remote control

► Depending on equipment, press one of these buttons to unlock the vehicle.

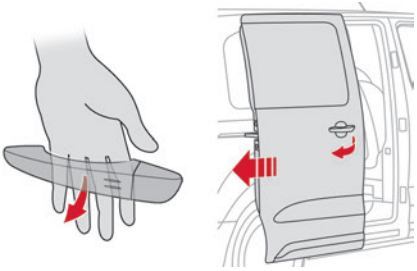
Using the remote control with electric sliding side door(s)

► To **fully** unlock the vehicle and open the side door, press and hold this button until the door has opened.

With Keyless Entry and Start on your person

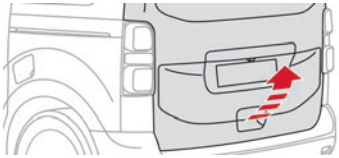
To unlock the vehicle, the remote control must be in recognition zone **A**.
► To unlock the vehicle **fully**, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front door(s), manual sliding side door(s) or left-hand side-hinged door) and then pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

With electric sliding side door(s)



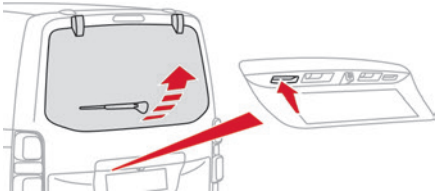
► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, pass your hand behind the handle to unlock the vehicle, then pull and release the handle. This action also causes the corresponding door to open.

With tailgate



► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, to unlock the **vehicle**, pull the tailgate handle and then lift it up to open it.

With an opening rear screen in the tailgate



► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, to unlock the vehicle, press the tailgate opening rear screen unlocking control. The screen will open slightly; then, lift it up to open it.

Selective unlocking

Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

With the remote control

► To unlock the **cabin** doors alone, press this button **once**.
► To unlock the side and rear doors of the **loading area**, press this button a **second time**.
If the vehicle is fitted with this function:

► Press this button to unlock the **loading area** only.

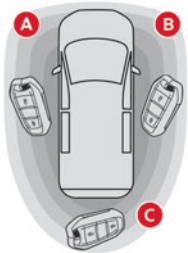
Using the remote control with electric sliding side door(s)

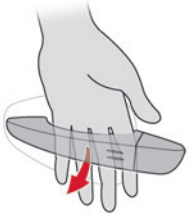
► To unlock the **loading area** alone without opening the side door, press the relevant door button or keep the button pressed down to open the door.

With Keyless Entry and Start on your person

► To unlock the **cabin** alone, pass your hand behind a handle of the front left or right doors, then pull the handle to open the door.

The door locking state of the **loading area** remains unchanged.

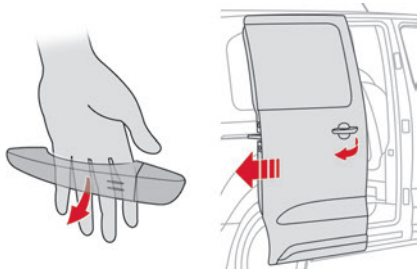




► To unlock the loading area alone, the remote control on your person in **recognition zone A**, **B** or **C**, pass your hand behind a handle of the front left or right doors, then pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

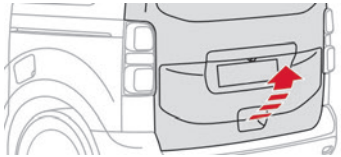
Depending on the version, the door mirrors unfold only when the cabin is unlocked, the alarm is deactivated.

With electric sliding side door(s)



► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, pass your hand behind the left-hand or right-hand door handle to unlock the **loading area**, then pull and release the handle. This action also causes the corresponding door to open.

With tailgate



► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, to unlock the **loading area**, pull the tailgate handle and then lift it up.

Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Locking

With the key

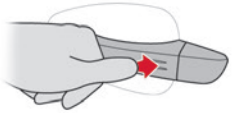
► To lock the vehicle **fully**, turn the key in the front left-hand door lock towards the rear of the vehicle.
If your vehicle has an alarm, it will not be activated.

With the remote control

► To lock the vehicle **completely**, press this button.

With Keyless Entry and Start on your person

To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be in recognition zone **A**.



► To lock the vehicle, press the markings on one of the door handles (front door(s), manual sliding side door(s) or left-hand side-hinged door).

With electric sliding side door(s)

► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, to lock the vehicle **fully**, press the markings on one of the **front** door handles.

With tailgate

► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, press the tailgate locking control to lock the vehicle.

Depending on version, keeping the locking controls depressed closes the windows. If the control is released, the window stops in its current position.

Ensure that no person or object might prevent the windows from closing properly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating windows.

If the vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, locking is signalled by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the remote control with you, even for a short time.

Deadlocking

Deadlocking deactivates the exterior and interior door controls, as well as the central locking button on the dashboard.
The horn remains operational.
You must therefore never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

With the key

► To deadlock the vehicle, turn the key in the front left-hand door lock towards the rear of the vehicle.
► Then, **within five seconds**, turn the key towards the rear again.

With the remote control

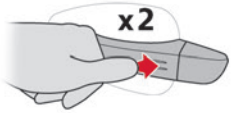
► To deadlock the vehicle, press this button.
► Then **within five seconds after locking**, press this button again.

Depending on version, the electric door mirrors fold at the same time.

i If the vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.

With Keyless Entry and Start on your person

To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be in recognition zone **A**.



► To lock the vehicle **fully**, press the markings on one of the door handles (front door(s), manual sliding side door(s) or left-hand side-hinged door).
► To deadlock the vehicle, press the markings again **within five seconds.**

With electric sliding side door(s)

► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, to lock the vehicle **fully**, press the markings on one of the **front** door handles.
► To deadlock the vehicle, press the markings again **within five seconds.**

With tailgate

► With the Keyless Entry and Start on your person, press the tailgate locking control to lock the **entire** vehicle.
► To deadlock the vehicle, press the control again **within five seconds**.

i If the vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, deadlocking is signalled by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:
– Remote control battery discharged.
– Remote control malfunction.
– Vehicle battery discharged.
– Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.
In the first case, change the remote control battery.
In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.
► Insert the key into the door lock.
► Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.
► Turn the key towards the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

i If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

i If the vehicle is unlocked with the key in the lock **after locking it with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start**

system, **all doors and the boot** are unlocked.
If the vehicle is unlocked with the key in the lock **after locking it with the key**, only the doors (front door and sliding side door(s)) are unlocked. The side-hinged doors and tailgate are not unlocked. Switching on the ignition unlocks them.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:
– Central locking malfunction.
– Battery disconnected or discharged.

! In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Front left-hand door

► Insert the key into the door lock.
► Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Front passenger door and sliding side door

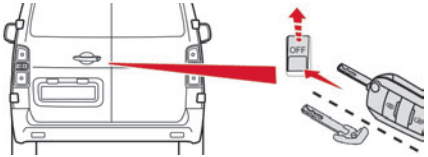
Unlocking
► Pull the interior door opening handle.
Locking
► Open the door.
► For the side door, check that the child lock is not on. Refer to the corresponding section.

Front passenger door

Sliding side door
► Remove the black cap on the edge of the door, using the key.
► Insert the key in the aperture without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
► Remove the key and refit the black cap.
► Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

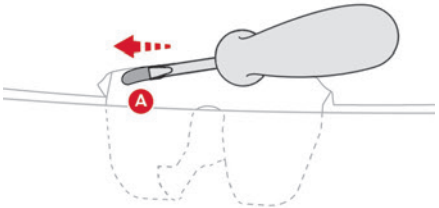
Side-hinged doors

Unlocking
► Use the interior opening handle.
Locking
► If fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not on.
► Open the left-hand side-hinged door.



► Insert the key into the latch aperture on the edge of the door (without forcing it) and slide the assembly upwards.
► Remove the key.
► Close the door and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking the tailgate



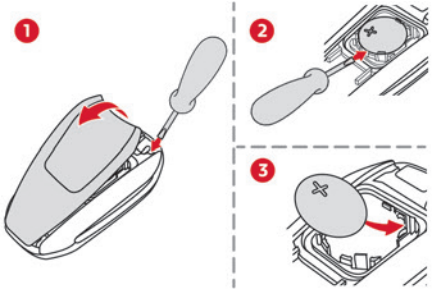
► From inside the vehicle, insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** on the lock to unlock the tailgate.
► Move the latch to the left.

i If the fault persists after closing again, the tailgate will remain locked.

Changing the battery

If the battery is flat, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.



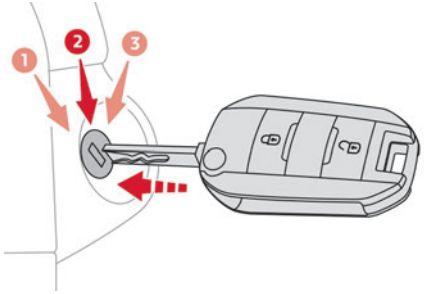
► Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
► Remove the flat battery from its housing.
► Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.
► Reinitialise the remote control.
For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

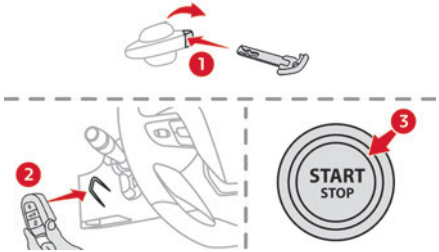
Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

Without Keyless Entry and Start

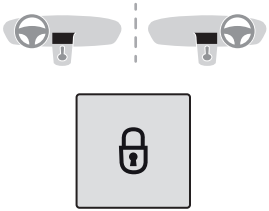


► Switch the ignition off.
► Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
► Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
► Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.
The remote control is now fully operational again.



► Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
► Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
► **With a manual gearbox,** place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► **With an automatic gearbox or drive selector**, while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.
► Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.
If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Central locking



Manual

► Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors, tailgate or side-hinged doors) from inside the passenger compartment.
The indicator lamp comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.

! Central locking does not take place if any of the doors are open.

i **When locking/deadlocking from the outside**
When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.
► After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
► After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

! Driving with the doors locked makes access for the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

i When transporting an oversized load (tailgate or side-hinged doors open), press the button to lock only the cab doors.

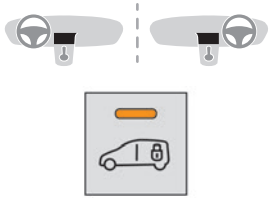
i When transporting an oversized load (tailgate or side-hinged doors open), press the button to lock only the front and rear doors (sliding side door).

i When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.
Central locking from the inside does not operate if one of the doors is open (indicated by a mechanical noise coming from the locks).
When the tailgate or side-hinged doors are open, only the other doors are locked (the button does not light up).

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and the tailgate or the side-hinged doors can lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).
To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):
► Press the button until an audible signal is heard and/or a message appears on the screen.

Locking/unlocking the loading area



i This button is unavailable if the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Start, depending on equipment) or if any of the doors are still open.

Automatic

The **loading area** is always locked when driving.

> To deactivate this automatic locking, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual

► With complete unlocking activated, press this button to lock (indicator lamp comes on)/unlock (indicator lamp goes off) the **vehicle**.

► With selective unlocking activated, press this button to lock (indicator lamp comes on)/unlock (indicator lamp goes off) the **loading area**.

> Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

> The indicator lamp goes off when unlocking one or more doors of the **loading area**.
> With the ignition off and the vehicle fully locked, the indicator lamp goes off for energy economy reasons.

Electric sliding side door(s)

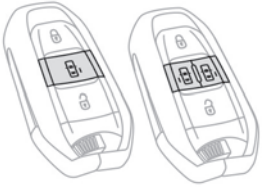
The exterior and interior door handles and the interior buttons allow the electrically powered movement of the door to be started.
Opening and closing of the doors is accompanied by an audible signal.

Opening

With the exterior or interior handle

► With the door unlocked, pull and release the handle to start opening the door. Pull the handle again to reverse the direction of the door's movement.

With the remote control

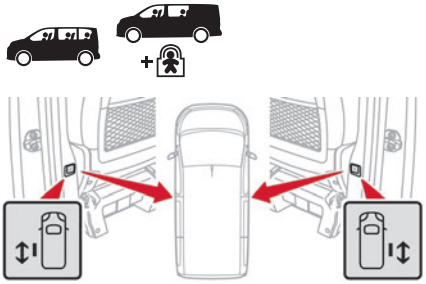


► With the door unlocked, press and hold this button until the corresponding sliding side door has opened.

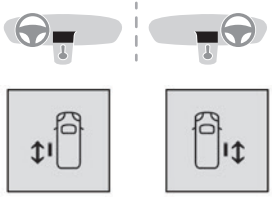
► Press this button again to reverse the direction of the door's movement.

> The remote control buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

With the button(s) on the door pillar



With the button(s) at the front

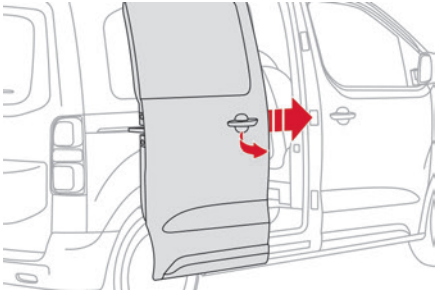


► With total unlocking activated and the child lock deactivated, to unlock the vehicle and start

opening a door, press the button corresponding to the door you wish to open.
► With selective unlocking activated, to unlock only the **loading area** and start opening a door, press the button corresponding to the door you wish to open.
► In both cases, pressing the button again reverses the direction of the door's movement.

Closing

With the exterior handle



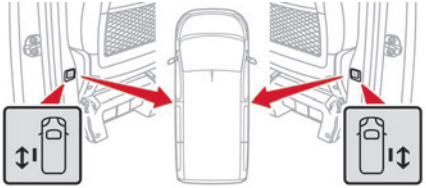
► Pull and release the handle to start closing the door. Pull the handle again to reverse the direction of the door's movement.

With the remote control

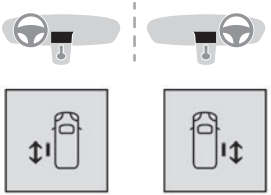
► Press and hold this button until the sliding side door has closed. Pull the handle again to reverse the direction of the door's movement.

> The remote control buttons are not active with the ignition switched on.

With the button(s) on the door pillar



With the button(s) at the front



► To start closing a door, press the corresponding button for that door. Press again to reverse the direction of the door's movement.

> The button is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if the speed of the vehicle is above 20 mph (30 km/h).

> The button(s) at the front or on the door pillar is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal, if:
> – the vehicle is moving,
> – the child lock is on (activated) (for the buttons on the door pillars),
> – the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting, depending on equipment).
> The button for the left-hand door is not operational and pressing it results in an audible signal if the fuel filler flap is open.

General recommendations for the sliding side doors

> Doors must only be operated when the vehicle is stationary.
> For your safety and that of your passengers, as well as for correct operation of the doors, you are strongly advised not to drive with a door open.
> Always check that it is safe to operate the door and in particular, be sure not to leave children or animals near the door controls without supervision.
> The audible warning, the lighting of the "door open" warning lamp and the message on the screen are there to remind you. Contact a

CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if you want to deactivate this warning.
Lock the vehicle when you use an automatic car wash.

! Before opening or closing and while moving doors, ensure that no person, animal or object is in the door frame or any other position that would block the desired movement, inside or outside the vehicle.
If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if any part of a person or an object is trapped or caught.
Electrical door opening is disabled at speeds above 2 mph (3 km/h):
– However, if the vehicle started moving while the doors were open, the speed must be reduced below 19 mph (30 km/h) before they can be closed.
– Any attempt to open a door electrically using the interior handle while driving results in it only being possible to open the door manually.
– This situation is accompanied by the audible warning, the lighting of the "door open" warning lamp and the message on the screen. To release the door and be able to operate it again, it is necessary to stop the vehicle.

! Take care not to block the guide space on the floor so that the door can slide correctly.
For safety and functional reasons, do not drive with the sliding side door open.

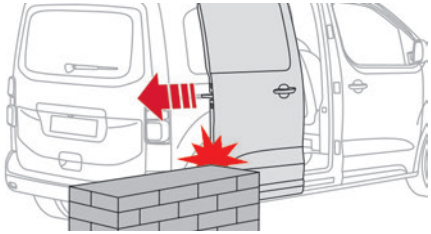
i The electric controls are disabled in the event of an impact. Manual opening and closing remain possible.

i While starting the engine, door movements are paused, resuming when the engine is running.

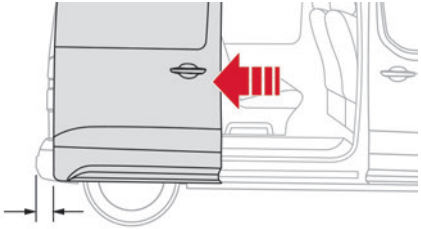
i Depending on the engine fitted, if the door is closed and an opening request is issued in Stop mode of Stop & Start, the door will open slightly and then stop. In Start mode, the door will resume its movement when the engine re-starts.

i To hold the sliding side door in the open position, open the door fully to engage the latch (located at the bottom of the door).

Doors and door clearances

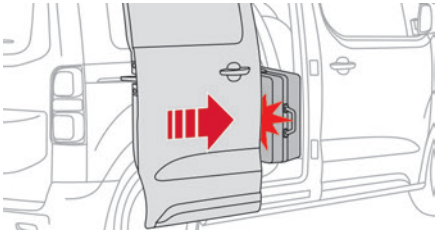


When open, a door projects beyond the body. Allow adequate clearance when parking alongside walls, lamp-posts, high pavements, etc.



i When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

Safety/Obstacle detection with electric door(s)



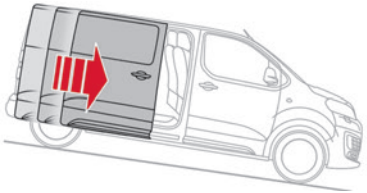
The obstacle detection system is triggered when the moving door encounters an obstacle with a certain level of physical resistance. If an obstacle is detected:
– while the door is closing, the door stops then opens fully.
– while the door is opening, the door stops then closes.
– twice in succession during a movement of the door, the door will no longer close electrically (uninitialisation).
On a steep slope: a safety system slows down the movement of the door.
In all cases, wait a few seconds before operating the door (closing or opening).
Close the door manually for safety reasons.
Then reinitialise the door.

Reinitialising electric doors

If electrical operations no longer work:
► Fully close the door(s) **manually**.
► Fully open the door(s) **electrically**.
► Close the door(s) **electrically**.
On completion of this procedure, electric operation of the doors is restored.
However, if a problem persists following this procedure, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

On a steep slope

It is possible to open and close the doors electrically on slopes of up to a 20% gradient.
If the vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing up the slope, open the door with care. The door may open more quickly due to the incline.
On a steep slope, guide the side door manually to help it to close.

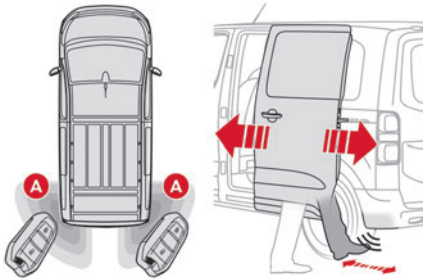


If your vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing down the slope, the door may not stay open and may close **violently** with the risk of injury.

! In the case of a steep slope, the door may be driven by its own weight and as a consequence may open or close **violently**.
There would not be time for action at the electric controls to take effect.
There would not be time for the obstacle detection system to react.
Take care not to leave the vehicle on a steep slope with the door(s) open without supervision. If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

Hands-free sliding side door(s)

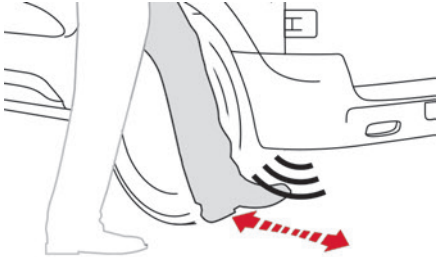
Opening/Closing



With a movement of your foot while keeping the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A**, the system unlocks and opens the sliding side door or closes and locks it.
The remote control must be located at the rear of the vehicle, at least about 30 cm but no more than about 2 m from the vehicle.

i The automatic locking after closing the door can be programmed in the vehicle configuration menu.

! Before making the movement with your foot, ensure that you are steady and well positioned, so that you do not lose your balance (rain, snow, ice, mud, etc.).
Take care not to touch the exhaust tailpipe when making the movement with your foot - risk of burns.



► Put your foot beneath the corner of the rear bumper, then move the foot at normal speed with a sweeping side movement.
The sensor detects the foot approaching and leaving and triggers the opening or closing of the side door.

i Make the movement without interruption and do not repeat it immediately afterwards or several times.
If the door does not open, wait about 2 seconds before trying again.
Do not keep the foot in the air.

i Confirmation that the door is going to open or close is signalled by the direction indicators flashing for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.
The movement of the door is reversed if the movement of the foot takes place during the manoeuvre.
If the vehicle is so equipped, the electric door mirrors fold/unfold on locking/unlocking the vehicle.

Automatic locking

The vehicle locks itself following the hands-free closing of the sliding door.

i If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, locking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

Activation/Deactivation

With audio system or touch screen

By default, hands-free access is activated.
The "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function or automatic vehicle locking when the sliding door is closed is activated and deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Malfunction

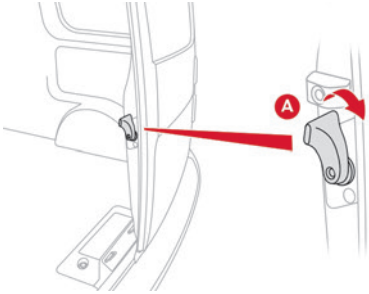
An audible signal repeated three times while using the function indicates a fault with the system.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If the "**Hands-free tailgate access self-locking**" option is selected in the vehicle menu and after closing the door, check that the vehicle is properly locked.
Locking will not take place:
– if the ignition is on,
– if one of the doors or the tailgate is open,
– if a "Keyless Entry and Start" remote control is inside the vehicle.
If a number of gestures with your foot have no effect, wait a few seconds before starting again.
The system is automatically deactivated in heavy rain or with accumulations of snow.
If it does not work, make sure that the remote control is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (smartphone, etc.).
Operation may be affected if using a prosthetic leg.
This system may not work correctly if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.

i The side door may open or close without warning if:
– Your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.
– A trailer is coupled or decoupled.
– A bicycle carrier is installed or removed.
– Bicycles are loaded on to or unloaded from the bicycle carrier.
– Something is deposited or lifted behind the vehicle.
– An animal approaches the bumper,
– The vehicle is washed.
– The vehicle is being serviced.
– A wheel is changed.
To avoid any sudden operation, keep the key away from the detection zone (also from the boot's interior sides) or deactivate the function in the vehicle configuration menu.

! Ensure that no person or object might prevent the correct opening or closing of the doors.
Be aware of children when operating the doors.

Side-hinged rear doors

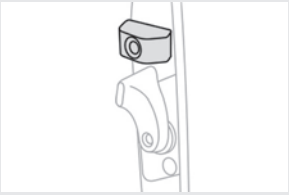


► After first opening the left-hand door, pull the lever **A** towards you to open the right-hand door.

Closing

► First close the right-hand door, then the left-hand door.

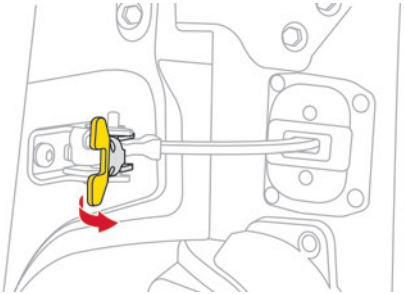
i If the left-hand door is closed first, a buffer stop located on the edge of the right-hand door prevents it closing.



If the left-hand side-hinged door is not properly closed, the "**door open**" warning lamp lights up

(the right-hand door is not detected). For more information on the **List of warning lamps** and, in particular, the door open warning, refer to the corresponding section.

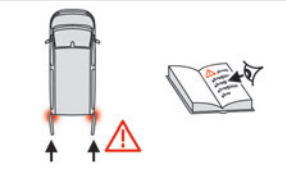
Opening to approximately 180°



If fitted to your vehicle, a check strap system allows the doors to be opened from about 90° to about 180°.

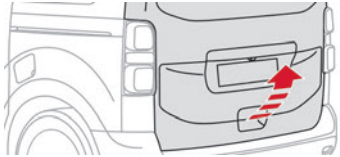
► Pull the yellow control when the door is open. The check strap will engage again automatically on closing.

! When parked with the rear doors open to 90°, the doors will cover the rear lamps. In order to warn other road users travelling in the same direction (who may not be aware that the vehicle is stationary) of the vehicle's position, use a warning triangle or other device required by legislation and regulations in your country.



Tailgate

Opening



► After unlocking the vehicle, pull the handle, then raise the tailgate.

Closing

► Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle, then lock it.

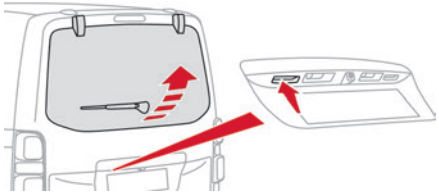
If the tailgate is not properly closed, the "**door open**" warning lamp comes on. For more information on the **list of warning and indicator lamps**, and in particular the door open warning, refer to the corresponding section.

! In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Tailgate rear screen

The opening rear screen allows you to access the rear of the vehicle directly, without having to open the tailgate.

Opening



After unlocking the vehicle, press this control and lift the rear screen to open it.

Closing

Close the rear screen by pressing the centre of the glass until it is fully closed.

If the tailgate rear screen is not properly closed, the "**door open**" warning lamp comes on. For more information on the **list of warning and**

indicator lamps and in particular the door open warning, refer to the corresponding section.

The tailgate and rear screen cannot both be open at the same time, to avoid damaging them.

Alarm

(Depending on version)

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet, for example.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system only checks for any variation in volume in the **cab**.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or enters the vehicle's **cab**; however it is not triggered if someone enters the **loading area**.

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Self-protection function

The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

Work on the alarm system
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If your vehicle is fitted with Additional Heating / Ventilation, volumetric monitoring is not compatible with this system.
For more information on **Additional Heating / Ventilation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

► Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
► Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or with the Keyless Entry and Start system.
When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, tailgate/side-hinged doors or bonnet) is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

Deactivation

► Press the remote control unlocking button.

or

► Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Start system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

> If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered ten times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button indicates that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:

– Slightly open window.
– Washing the vehicle.
– Changing a wheel.
– Towing the vehicle.
– Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating interior volumetric monitoring

► Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until the indicator lamp is on fixed.

► Exit the vehicle.

► Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

Only exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.

To take effect, this deactivation must be performed whenever the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating interior volumetric monitoring

► Deactivate exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

► Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

► Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

► unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,

► Open the door; this sets off the alarm.

► Upon switching on the ignition the alarm stops. The button indicator lamp goes off.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a system malfunction.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic activation

(Depending on version)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.
► To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

Electric windows

1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.

Operation

► To open/close the window manually, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.
► To open/close the window automatically, press/pull the switch fully, beyond the point of resistance; the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released (pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window).

i The electric window controls remain operational for about 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off if the front doors are not open.
After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch

If your vehicle is fitted with the safety anti-pinch function, when the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers.
In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the control until the window opens completely. Within 4 seconds, pull the control until the window closes.
The safety anti-pinch does not operate while doing this.

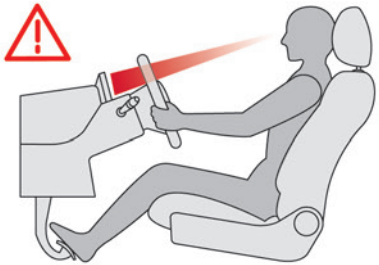
Reinitialising the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.
The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.
For each window:
► Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
► Continue to pull the control for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.
When the driver operates the passenger electric window control, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Correct driving position

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:
– the height of the head restraint,
– the seat backrest angle,
– the seat cushion height,
– the longitudinal position of the seat,
– the height and reach of the steering wheel,
– the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

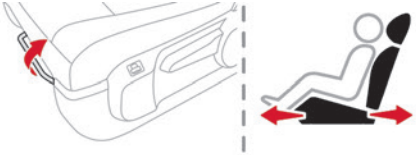


! Once these adjustments have been made, check the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Manually-adjusted front seats

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

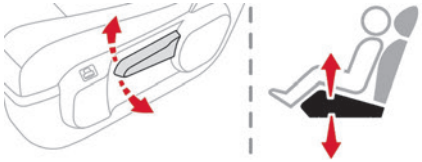
Longitudinal



► Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
► Release the control bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

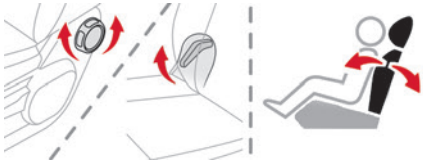
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Height



► Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, until you obtain the position required.

Backrest angle



► Depending on equipment, turn the knob or pull the control all the way up and tilt the backrest forwards or backwards to obtain the desired angle.

Lumbar

► Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Table position of the driver's and/or the front passenger seat backrest

On the front passenger side, this position allows long objects to be carried.
On the driver's side, this position allows rear passengers to be helped out of the vehicle (by the emergency services).

! Check that there is no object that could interfere with the movement of a seat, both above and below.

► Place the head restraint in the low position, and if fitted to your vehicle, raise the armrest and fold the table fitted to the back of the seat.

i We recommend deactivating the front passenger airbag.

► Pull the control fully up and tip the backrest forward.
To return to the normal position, pull the control up to release the backrest, then pull the backrest up to its raised position.

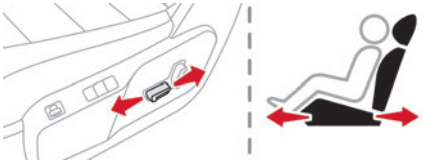
! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the folded backrest can turn into projectiles.

Electric front seat

i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

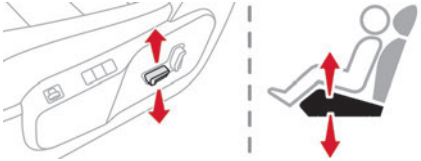
Longitudinal



► Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.

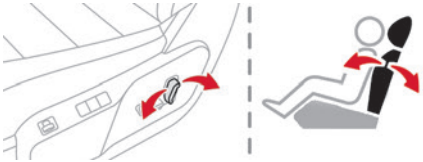
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Seat cushion height



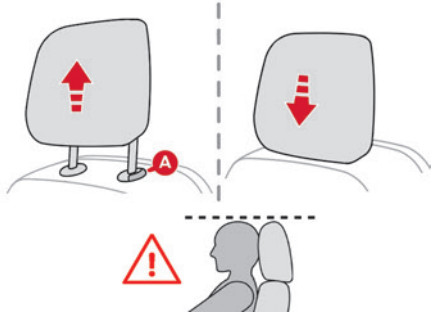
► Tilt the control upwards or downwards to obtain the desired height.

Backrest angle



► Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the backrest.

Head restraint height adjustment



If fitted to your vehicle.
► To raise it, pull it upwards as far as possible (notch).
► To remove it, press the lug **A** and pull it upwards.
► To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
► To lower it, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.

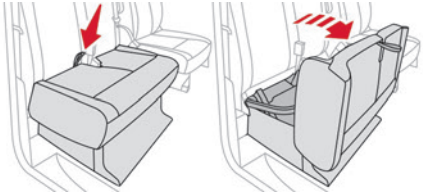
! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.
Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

2-seat front bench seat

If fitted in the vehicle, this is fixed and has a seat belt built into the backrest for the seat next to the driver's seat.

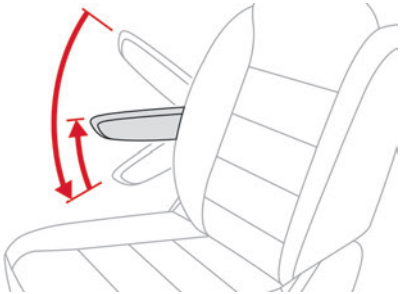
i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Under-seat storage



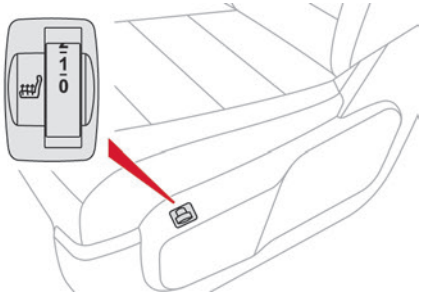
If the vehicle is so equipped, a storage space is provided under the seat.
► Pull the strap towards you to tip the seat cushion.

Armrest



The armrest has notches.
► Pull the armrest fully up
► Lower it fully down.
► Raise the armrest to the desired position.

Heated seats and bench seat



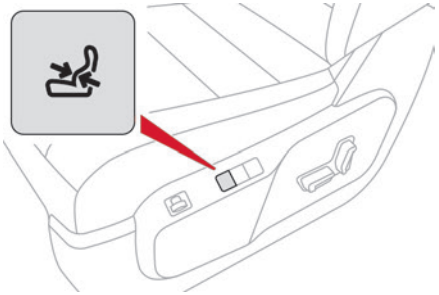
If fitted to your vehicle.

► With the engine running and when the outside temperature is below 20 °C, use the adjustment knob to switch on and select the level of heating required from **0** (off) to **3** (high).

! Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:
– Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
– Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
– Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
– Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

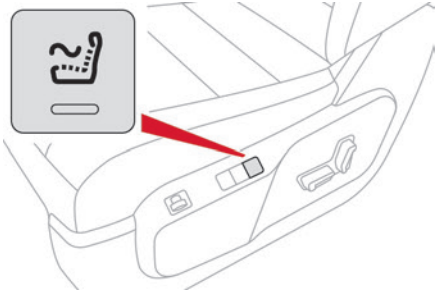
Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

Electric lumbar adjustment



► Press the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function



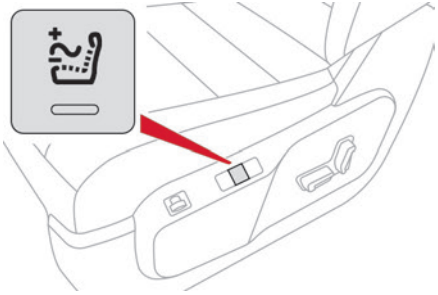
This function provides lumbar massage; it only operates when the engine is running as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start system.

Activation/Deactivation

► Press this button to activate/deactivate the function.

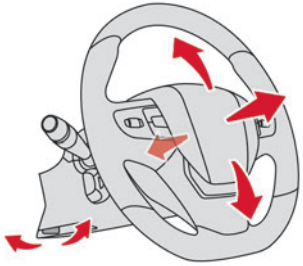
Upon activation, the indicator lamp comes on.
The massage function is activated for a period of one hour.
During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes (6 minutes of massage followed by a 4-minute break).
After one hour, the function is deactivated; the indicator lamp goes off.

Adjustment of intensity



Press this button to adjust the intensity of the massage.
Two levels of massage are available.

Steering wheel adjustment



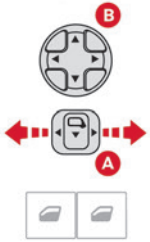
► **When stationary**, lower the control lever to release the steering wheel.
► Adjust the height and reach.
► Pull the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

! As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots". The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.



► Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
► Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
► Return control **A** to its central position.

Manual folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).
► Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.

► From the inside, with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position.
► Pull control **A** backwards.

► Lock the vehicle from the outside.

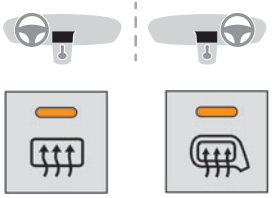
i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Electric unfolding

The door mirrors are unfolded electrically when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or key. Unless folding was selected with control **A**, pull the control in the central position towards the rear again.

i Folding/unfolding when locking/unlocking the vehicle can be deactivated. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Heated mirrors



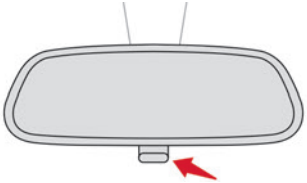
► Press one of these buttons.

i For more information on **Rear screen demisting/de-icing**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

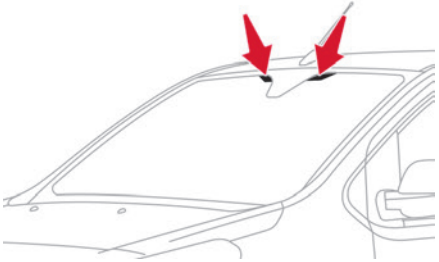
Day/night position



► Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.
► Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Windscreen zone for toll badge

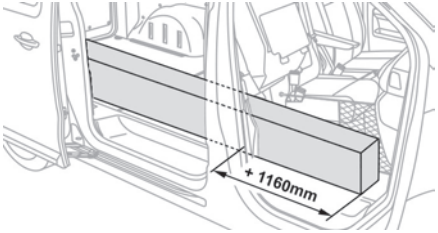
Depending on the version, the vehicle can be equipped with a athermic windscreen type.
For a best functionnement of the toll badge system, it is necessary to place the toll badge on the zone of windscreen provided for the purpose symbolised with of black dotteds around of the interior rear view mirror base.



i For the version without athermic windscreen, to limit the obstruction of you field of vision through the windscreen, we recommend you to place the toll badge in the upper part of the windscreen.

Moduwork

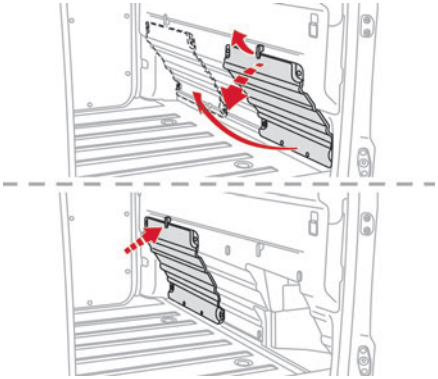
The cushion of the bench seat's outer seat can be folded up against the backrest to create a loading area inside the cab.
A removable flap on the partition can be removed to allow long objects to be loaded.



Once the removable flap has been removed, you can load long objects under the outer seat.

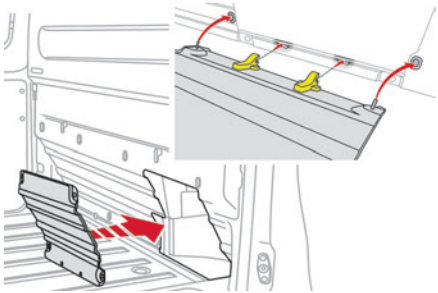
Removable flap (type 1)

Removing the flap



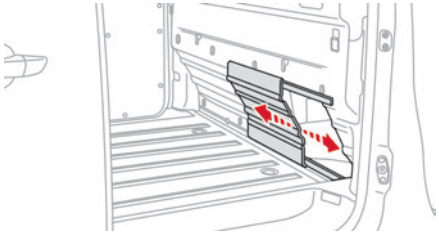
► While holding the flap with one hand, turn the control at the top of the flap with the other hand to release it.
► Lower the flap to remove it from its housing.
► Stow it behind the driver's seat, clipping it into the attachment lugs.
► Turn the control at the top of the flap to secure it.

Refitting the flap



► Tilt the flap, with the yellow hinges pointing downwards.
► Insert the hinges into their housing then press down fully (to avoid vibrations).
► With one hand lift the flap to close it, then with the other hand turn the control at the top of the flap to secure it.

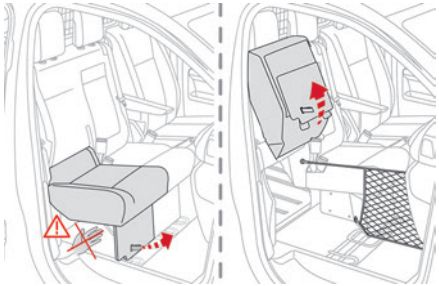
Removable flap (type 2)



► To open or close the flap, slide it to the left or right.
The flap is kept in the closed or open position with magnets located at each end position.

Folding seat cushion

Raising the seat cushion

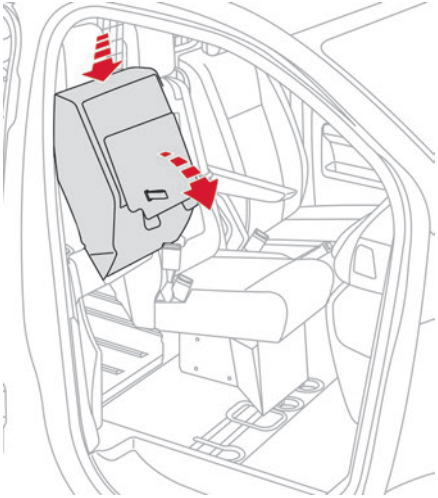


► With one hand, firmly pull the strap forwards to unlock the seat cushion.
► A strut lifts the seat cushoin against the backrest.

Never put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide it upwards, as your fingers may become trapped.
Always use only the strap.

When the outer seat is raised and the flap is removed, you must install the anti-slip net.
Refer to the **Anti-slip net** section.

Lowering the seat cushion

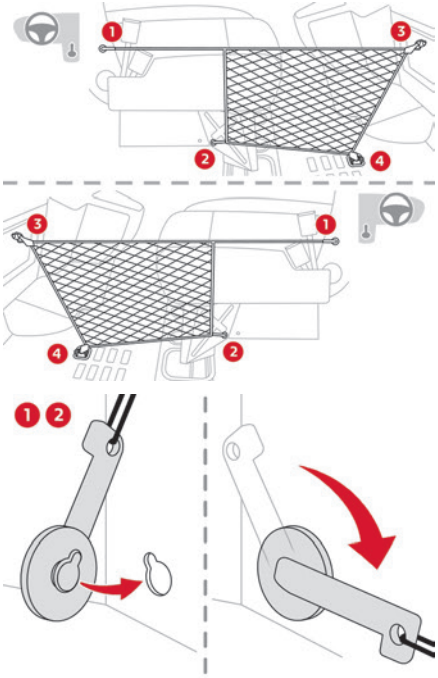


► Remove the anti-slip net.
► To reposition the seat cushion, press firmly on the top of the seat with one hand to lower the seat cushion until it locks into the seat position.

Ensure that there are no objects or feet obstructing the anchorage points or preventing the assembly from locking properly.

Anti-slip net

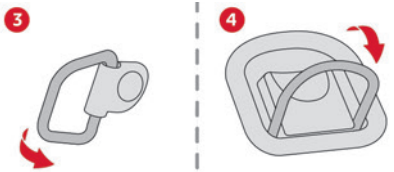
Installing the net



► Put the first fastener into the upper cut-out **1**, located beneath the folded seat cushion. Keep the fastener pressed against the structure, then

turn it a quarter turn (in a clockwise direction) to lock it.

► Put the second fastener into the lower cut-out **2**, located on the seat base. Keep the fastener pressed against the structure, then turn it a quarter turn (in a clockwise direction) to lock it.



► Secure the first hook to the ring **3** located in the glove box.

► Secure the second hook to the ring **4** located on the floor.

Removing the net

► Release the hooks from the rings **4** and **3**.

► Remove the lower fastener **2** then the upper fastener **1**, turning them by a quarter turn backwards to unlock them.

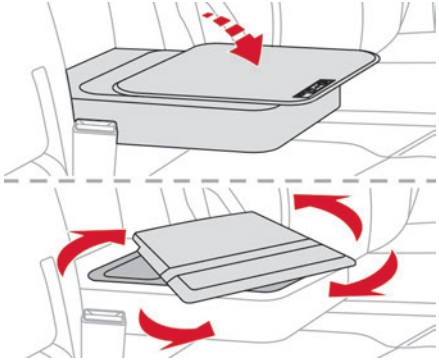
! Make sure that the size, shape and volume of the loads carried are compatible with the highway code and safety regulations and do not impair the driver's field of vision.
All loads must be appropriately secured to prevent or minimise displacement and prevent injury.

Install the anti-slip net (supplied with the vehicle) every time that the seat is raised and the partition flap removed.
Never use the net for any other purposes.
Regularly check the condition of the anti-slip net. As soon as signs of wear or tear appear, contact a CITROËN dealer to have it replaced by an anti-slip net that meets the specifications required by CITROËN for the vehicle.
Always fit the removable flap back into place when you are not carrying any long loads.

"Rotating writing table"

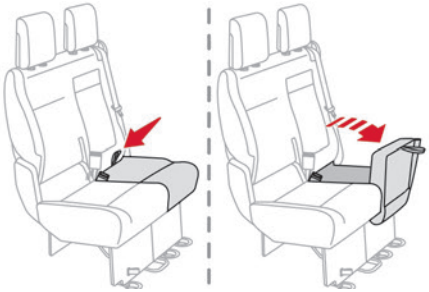
If fitted to your vehicle, the central seat cushion of the bench seat can be tilted to form a pivoting writing table, thus creating a mobile desk (with the vehicle stationary).

► Pull the handle located at the top of the backrest cushion.



! Never use the table while the vehicle is being driven.
In the event of sudden braking or impact, any objects on the table might become dangerous projectiles that could cause injury.

Central seat cushion storage



Precautions for the seats and bench seats

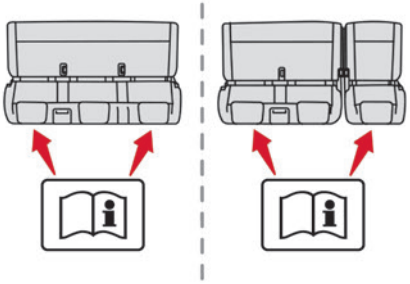
Do not remove a head restraint without storing it and securing it to a support.
Ensure that the passengers can always access the seat belts and fasten them easily.
A passenger must not take their seat without adjusting the seat's head restraint correctly and adjusting and fastening their seat belt.

! Ensure that no object or passenger feet could obstruct the anchorage points or prevent the correct latching of the assembly.

i If removing and storing seats and bench seats out of the vehicle, ensure that they are placed in a clean area, so as to avoid introducing any foreign bodies into the mechanisms.

i The seats and bench seats are not designed for any other use than in the vehicle. They are equipped with mechanisms and features that may be damaged if used improperly or if dropped.

Loading luggage or objects behind the row 3 seat and bench seat



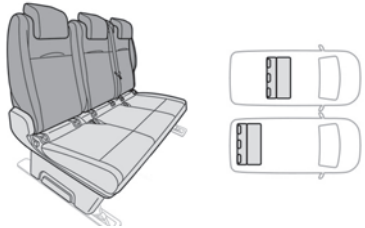
If you want to load luggage onto the backrests in row 3 while in the table position, the backrests in row 2 must also be in the table position.

When driving, it is prohibited to have a passenger:
– in rows 2 and 3, in the outer right-hand seat, if the bench seat is in the fully folded position,
– in the centre seat if the outer right-hand seat is in the fully folded position,
– in row 3 if the backrest in front (row 2) is in the table position,
– in row 3 if the seat/bench seat in front (row 2) is in the fully folded position.

Fixed one-piece bench seat

Combi, **Business**

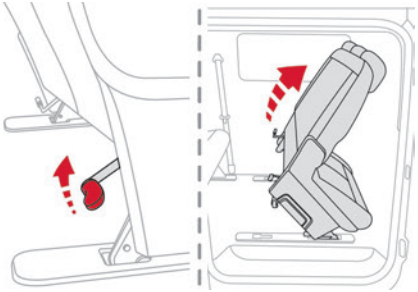
The different equipment and settings described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of your vehicle.



The bench seat has a one-piece backrest that may be fixed or foldable (table position).

> For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Access to row 3



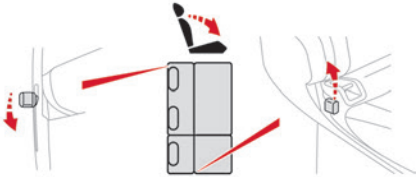
► Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.

► To return the seat, tip the bench towards the rear until the feet lock into place..

> It is not necessary to fold the backrest (table position) to tip the bench seat for access to row 3.

Folding the backrest to the table position

► Put the head restraints in the low position.



► From the rear, lower the handle to release the backrest.

► From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.

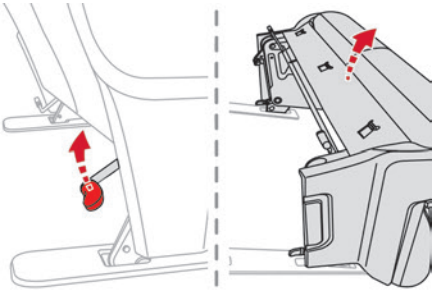
► Fold the backrest onto the cushion.

► To return the backrest to its normal position, raise the handle and pull the backrest up.

> Do not leave objects (such as a bag or toys) on the cushion when folding the backrest.

Tilting

► If your vehicle has the facility, place the backrest in the table position.



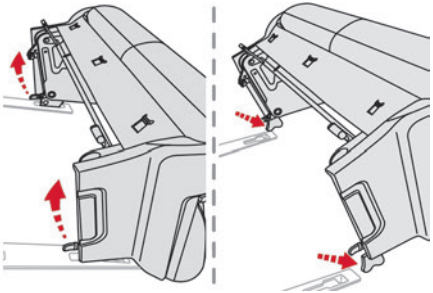
► Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.

► To return the seat, tip the bench towards the rear until the feet lock into place..

Removing

► If the vehicle is so equipped, place the backrest in the table position.

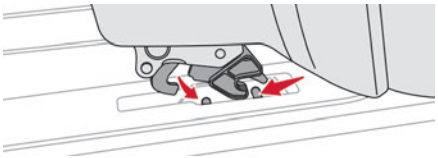
► Tip the bench seat.



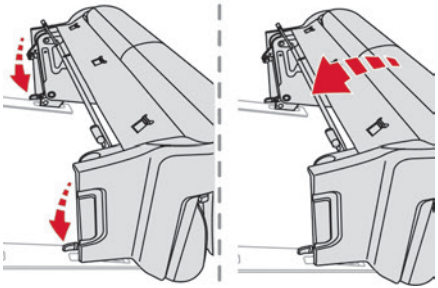
► Release the front feet using the handles.
► Disengage the bench seat from its anchorages.
► Remove the bench seat.

Refitting

► Check that there is no object obstructing the anchorages and preventing the feet locking into place.

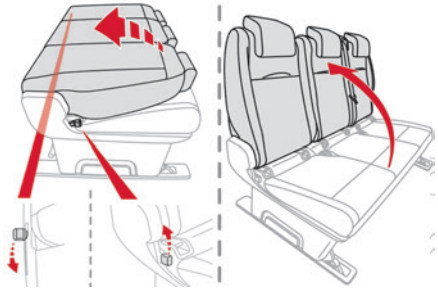


► Engage the front feet in the anchorages on the floor (as shown above).



► Lock the front feet using the handles.
► Tip the bench seat backwards until the rear feet lock into place.

! Be careful of passengers' feet when tipping.



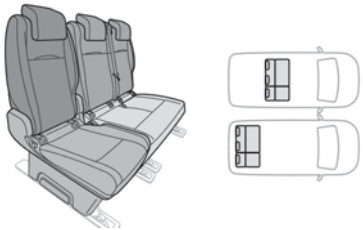
► If the vehicle is so equipped, pull the control and raise the backrest (from the rear, lower the handle).

i Check that the seat has correctly locked on the floor when returned to the seating position.

Fixed rear seat and bench seat

Combi, **Business**

The different equipment and settings described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of your vehicle.

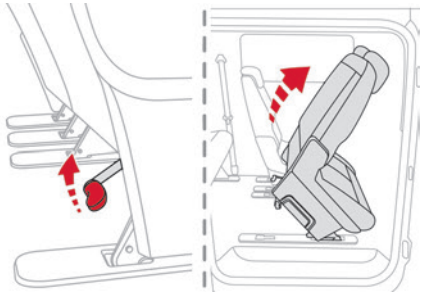


The seat has a backrest that may be fixed or foldable (table position).
The bench seat has a one-piece backrest that may be fixed or foldable (table position).

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Access to row 3

(example for an individual seat)

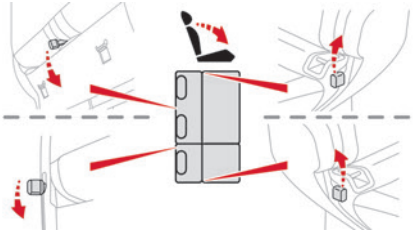


► Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
► To return the seat to the normal position, tip the seat backwards until the rear feet engage in their anchorages.

i It is not necessary to fold the backrest (table position) to tip the bench seat and so access row 3.

Folding the backrest into the table position

► Place the head restraints in the low position.

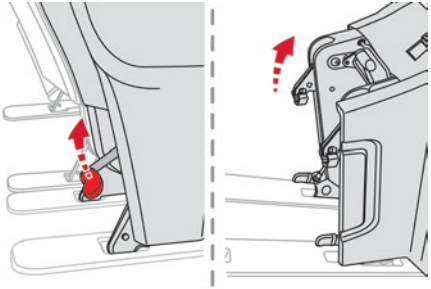


► From the rear, lower the lever to release the backrest.
► From the front, raise the lever to release the backrest.
► Fold the backrest onto the seat cushion.
► To return the backrest to the normal position, raise the lever and pull the backrest up (from the rear, lower the lever).

! Do not leave objects (such as a bag or toys) on the seat cushion when folding the backrest.

Tilting

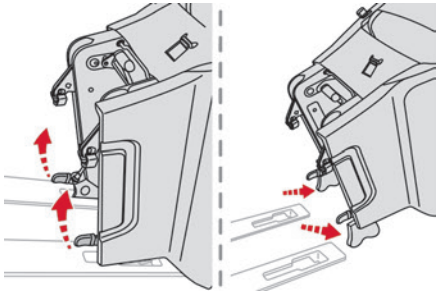
(example of an individual seat)
► If your vehicle has the facility, place the backrest in the table position.



► Using the handle, release the rear feet then tip the seat forward.
► To return the seat to the normal position, unfold the seat backwards until the rear feet engage in their anchorages.

Removing

(example of an individual seat)
► Tip the seat.



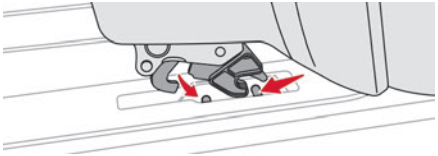
► Release the front feet using the handles.
► Disengage the seat from its anchorages.

► Remove the seat through the side door for row 2 or from the rear for row 3.

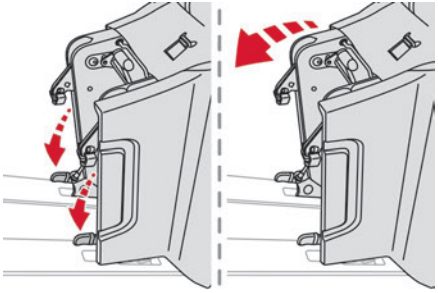
Refitting

(example of an individual seat)

► Check that there is no object obstructing the anchorage points and preventing the feet locking correctly into place.



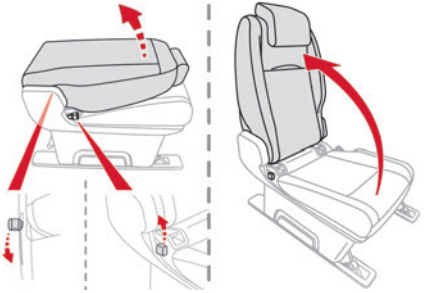
► Engage the front feet in the anchorage points on the floor (as shown above).



► Lock the front feet using the levers.

► Tilt the seat towards the rear until the rear feet lock into place.

Be careful of passengers' feet during the manoeuvre.



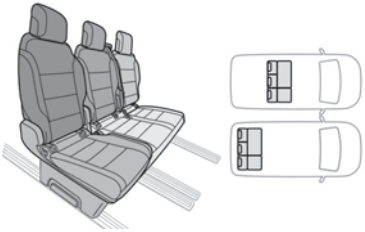
► If fitted to your vehicle, pull the control and raise the backrest (from the rear, lower the lever).

> i Check that the seat has correctly engaged in its anchorage points on the floor when returned to the sitting position.

Rear seat and bench seat on rails

Feel, **Shine**, **Business Lounge**

The different equipment and settings described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of your vehicle.



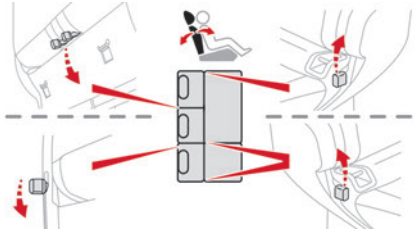
The individual seat is always on the right and the bench seat on the left (facing forward).

The seat has an independent backrest and the bench seat has two independent backrests.

> i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjusting the angle of the backrest

The reclining backrest can be adjusted to several positions.

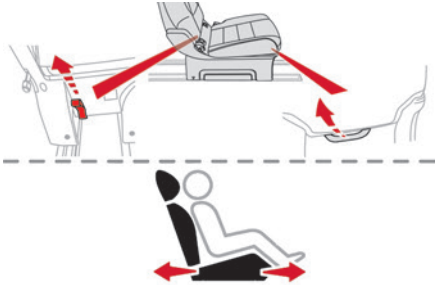


► To recline the backrest, pull the control upwards (from the rear, lower the handle).

► Release the control when the desired position is reached.

Moving forward or backward

(example for an individual seat)

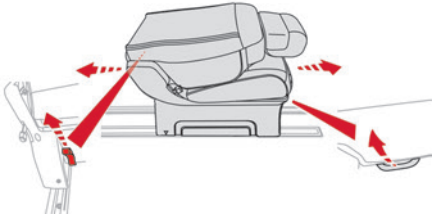


Two controls are provided for moving the seat forward and backward:

► From the rear, pull the strap without going beyond the point of resistance and push the seat forward or pull it backward.

► From the front, raise the control and slide the seat forward or backward.

Moving the seat along the full length of the rail

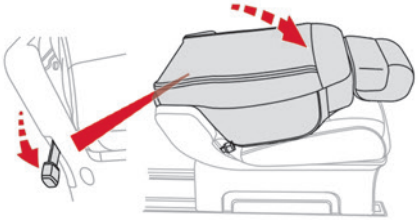


► Slide the seat by pulling on the front control or rear strap.

Folding the backrest to the table position

(example for an individual seat)

► Put the head restraints in the low position.



► From the rear, lower the handle to release the backrest.

► From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.

► Fold the backrest onto the cushion.

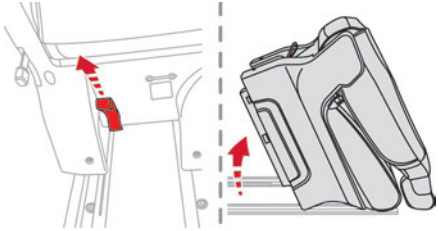
! Do not leave objects (such as a bag or toys) on the cushion when folding the backrest.

Removing

(example of an individual seat)

► Move the seat forward for access to the strap.

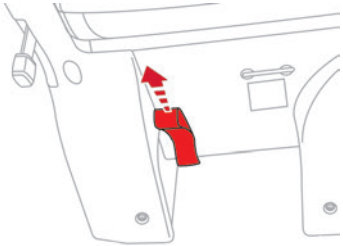
► Fold the backrest to the table position



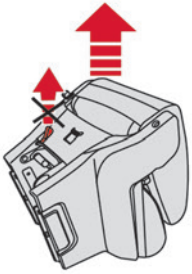
► From the rear, pull the strap fully to release the anchorages and tip the seat forwards to place it in the vertical position.

► Remove the seat through the side door for row 2 or through the rear for row 3.

Refitting



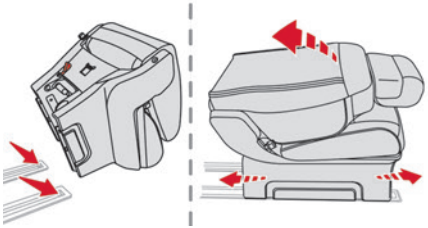
Before refitting the seat or bench seat in the vehicle, pull the strap fully to ensure that the latching mechanism has engaged.



Do not use the strap to lift the seat or bench seat.

(example of an individual seat)

► Check that nothing is obstructing the rails.



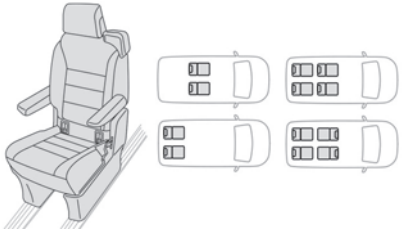
► Place the front part of the guides on the rails.
► Tip the seat to align the rear of the guides in the rails.
► Slide the seat forwards or backwards until it engages in the notches.
► Raise the backrest.

Check that the seat has correctly locked on the floor when returned to the seating position.

Individual rear seat(s) on rails

Shine, **Business Lounge**

The different equipment and settings described hereafter vary according to the version and the configuration of your vehicle.



The individual seat is fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt.
It can be placed facing **forwards** or facing **rearwards**.

If there is an individual seat facing rearwards in row 2, ensure that the seat in row 1 (driver or passenger) is not set too far back, in order to avoid contact between the two seats.
This could cause significant wear of the parts which are in contact.

For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

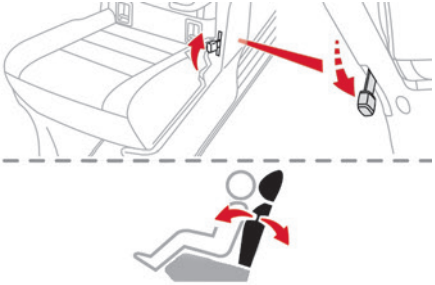
Armrest(s)

The armrest has notches.

► Pull the armrest fully up.
► Lower it fully.
► Raise the armrest to the desired notched position.

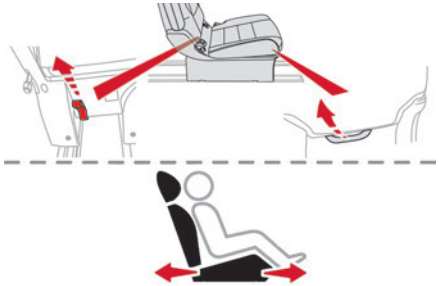
Adjusting the angle of the backrest

The backrest can be adjusted to several positions.



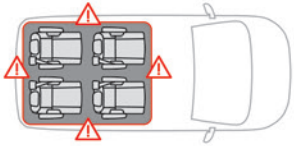
► To recline the backrest, pull the control upwards (from the rear, lower the handle).
► Release the control when the desired position is reached.

Moving forward or backward



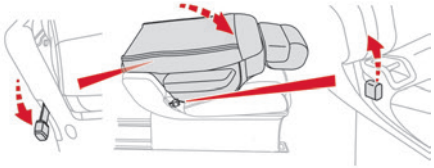
Two controls are provided for moving the seat forward and backward:
► From the rear, pull the strap without going beyond the point of resistance and push the seat forward or pull it backward.
► From the front, raise the control and slide the seat forward or backward.

Folding the backrest to the table position



! Ensure that nothing (examples: bag, case, toy, folding and sliding table) is interfering with the operation to fold the backrest.

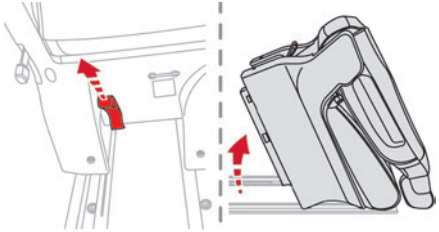
► Put the head restraints in the low position.



► From the rear, lower the handle to release the backrest.
► From the front, raise the handle to release the backrest.
► Fold the backrest onto the cushion.

Removing

► Move the seat forwards for access to the strap.
► Fold the backrest to the table position.

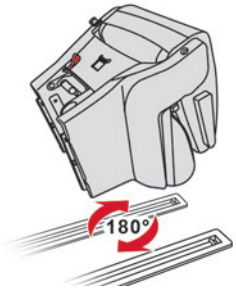


► From the rear, pull the strap beyond the point of resistance to release the anchorages and

tip the seat forwards to place it in the vertical position.

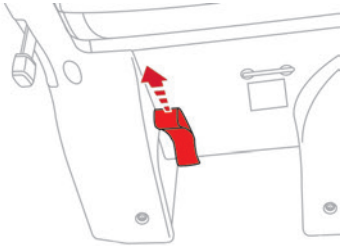
► Remove the seat through the side door for row 2 or through the rear for row 3.

Changing the direction of the seat

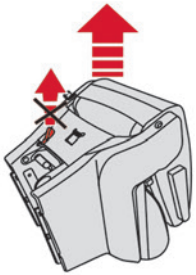


When the seat is removed, your can rotate it by 180°.

Refitting

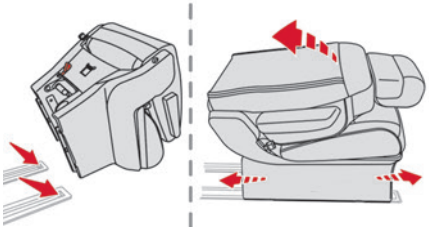


i Before refitting the seat in the vehicle, pull the strap fully to ensure that the latching mechanism has engaged.



! Do not use the strap to lift the seat.

► Check that nothing is obstructing the rails.



► Fit the front part on the rails.

► Tip the seat to align the rear of the guides in the rails.

► Slide the seat forwards or backwards until it engages in the notches.

► Raise the backrest.

i Check that the seat has correctly locked on the floor when returned to the seating position.

Fixed crew cab

The crew cab is made up of a fixed bench seat, seat belts, storage compartments (depending on equipment) and side windows. It is separated from the **loading area** by a high-strength partition.

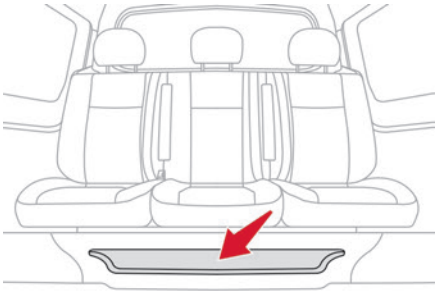
Rear bench seat

This ergonomic bench seat has three seats.

The two outer seats are fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

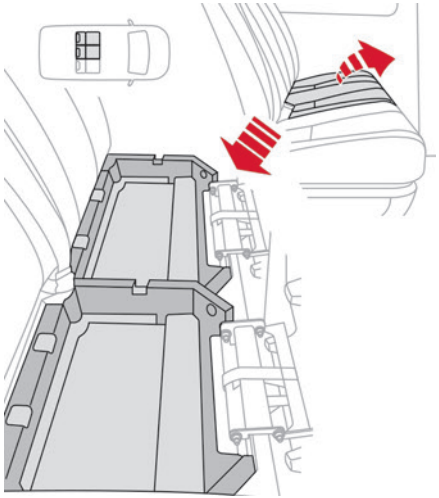
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Storage compartment

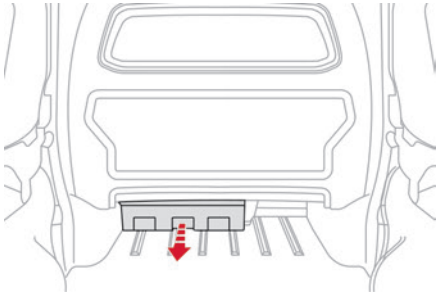


If applicable, a storage compartment is available at the front, underneath the bench seat.

Under seat cushion storage wells



If the vehicle is so equipped, they are located underneath the centre and outer left-hand seats. To gain access to it from the cab, tip the required seat forwards.



Depending on the country of sale, the wells can be dismantled and removed through the rear so that bulky objects can be stowed underneath the bench seat.

Do not attach anything to the cab fixing structure.

Do not exceed the number of passengers indicated on the registration certificate.

In the rear, the **loading area** is intended for carrying goods only.

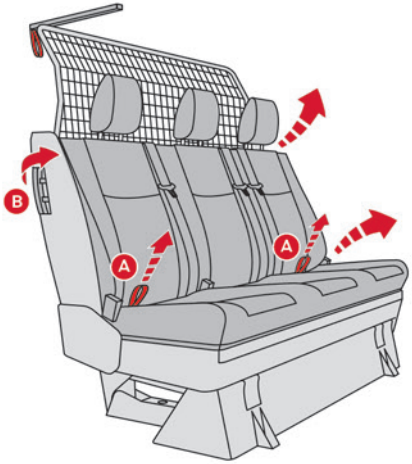
You are advised to place the goods or heavy objects as far forwards as possible in the **loading area** (towards the cab) and secure them by means of straps using the stowing rings on the floor.

The rear seat belt frames are not designed to secure the load being carried.

Folding crew cab

The crew cab has a folding bench seat, seat belts and side windows. It is separated from the **loading area** by the bench seat by a high-strength grille.

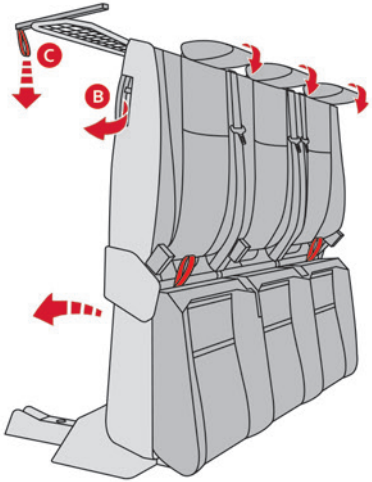
Folded position



► With just one hand, pull one of the straps **A** upwards to fold the bench seat.

► Using handle **B**, guide the movement of the bench seat until it locks in the folded position.

Bench seat position



► To put the bench seat back in place, pull the strap **C** to unlock the bench seat, then release the strap.

► Then, using only the handle **B**, guide the descent of the backrest to tip the assembly until it locks in the bench seat position.

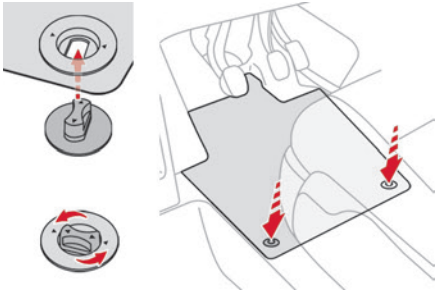
! Never put your hand underneath the bench seat to guide it downwards, as you could get your fingers trapped.
Ensure there are no objects or feet beneath the bench seat or obstructing the anchorage system, preventing the assembly from being correctly locked.

! Do not attach anything to the cab fixing structure.
Do not exceed the number of passengers indicated on the registration certificate.
In the rear, the load space is intended for carrying goods only.
It is recommended to place goods or heavy objects as far forwards as possible in the load space (towards the cab) and secure them by means of straps using the stowing rings on the floor.
The rear seat belt frames are not designed to secure the load being carried.

Interior fittings

Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet.
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

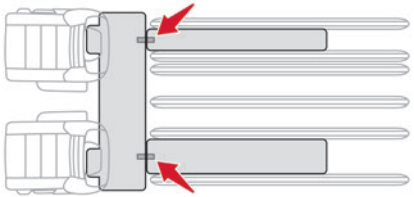
Removing/refitting

► To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat as far back as possible and give the fasteners a quarter turn.

► To refit it, position the mat and replace the fasteners, giving them a quarter turn.
► Check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/ speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

In row 2 and row 3



Use the Velcro straps to attach the transverse mat in row 2 with the longitudinal mats in rows 2 and 3.

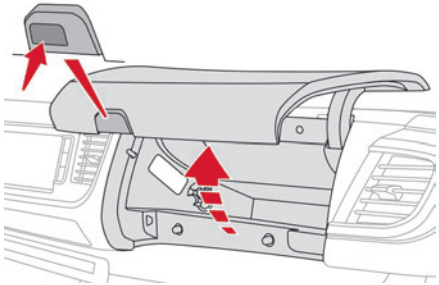
Glove box

It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch and can hold a bottle of water, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc.

! Never drive with the glove box (if equipped) open when a passenger is sitting at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration.

Storage compartment

This can hold a bottle of water, the vehicle's documentation, etc.



► To open the storage compartment, press the left-hand end of the control and guide the lid to its open position notch.
If your vehicle is so equipped, it is lit when the lid is opened.

! **When driving**, keep the storage compartment closed. Otherwise, there is

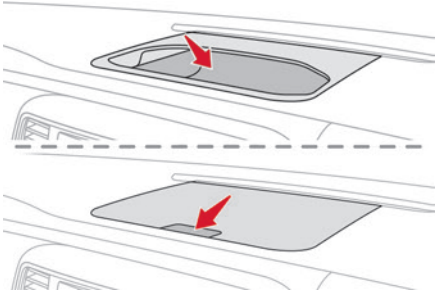
a risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Front door storage pockets

! Liquids carried in an open vessel (e.g. a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting a risk of damage on contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Be careful.

Upper glove box

This is located in the dashboard, behind the steering wheel.

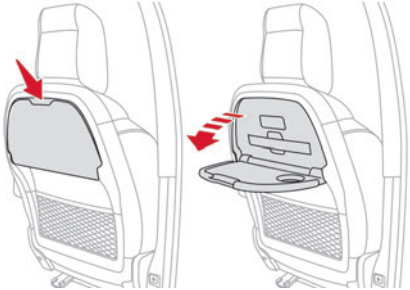


Press the control to open the lid (depending on version) then guide it to its fully open position. To close it, guide the lid then press the centre gently.

! Any liquid which could spill risks causing an electrical short circuit and therefore a potential fire.

"Aircraft" type tables

Fitted to the back of each front seat.



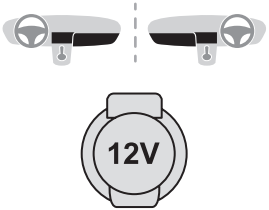
► To use the table, lower it fully until it locks in the low position.
► To stow it, raise the table to the high position, passing the point of resistance.

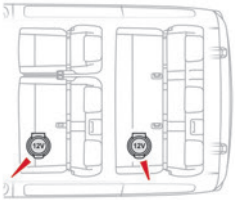
! On the passenger side, do not forget to fold the table up before placing the seat in the "table" position.
Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of emergency braking or impact.

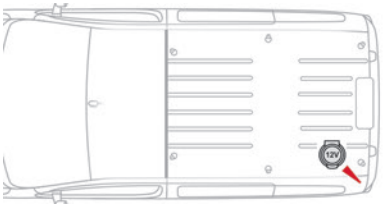
i For more information on the **Front seats**, and in particular placing the backrest in the "table" position, refer to the corresponding section.

12 V socket(s)

Depending on version.





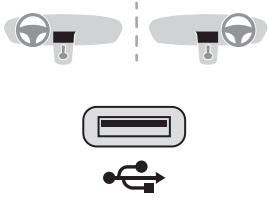


► To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB socket

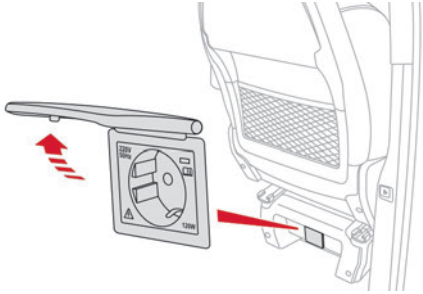


The socket can be used to connect a portable device or a USB memory stick.
The socket reads audio files that are sent to your audio system to be played through the vehicle's speakers.
These files can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or those on the audio system.
The USB socket also allows a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen.
For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

i When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

220 V socket

Depending on version, a 220 V/50 Hz socket (maximum power: 120 W) is located underneath the front right-hand seat and therefore accessible from row 2.
This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

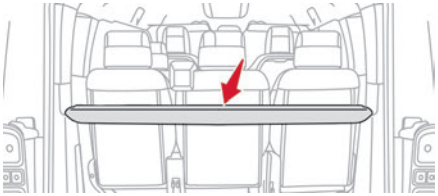


► Lift the cover.
► Check that the indicator lamp is on green.
► Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, bottle warmer, etc.).
In the event of a malfunction, the green indicator lamp flashes.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Connect only one device to the socket at a time (do not use an extension lead or multi-socket) and only connect devices with Class II insulation (indicated on the device).
Do not use devices with metallic cases.

If the power consumption becomes too high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), the power supply to the socket will be cut off; the green indicator lamp goes off

Load space cover

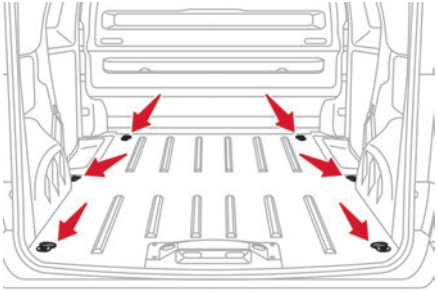


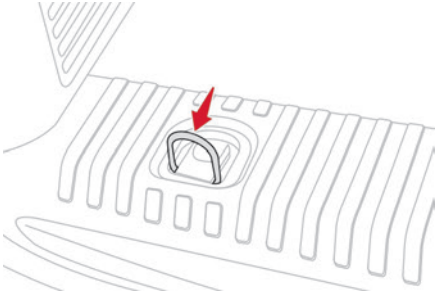
► To remove it, lift it up.
► To install it, insert the guides into their housings.

In the event of sudden deceleration, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

Loading area fittings

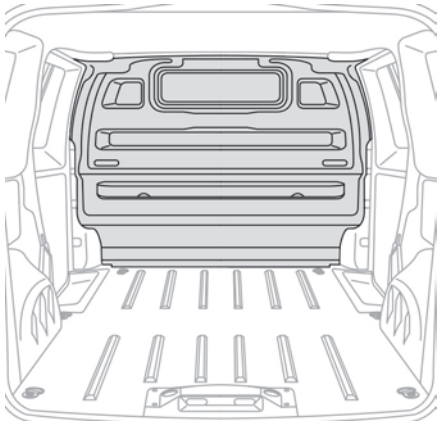
Stowing rings





Use the stowing rings on the rear floor to secure loads.
As a safety precaution in case of sharp braking, we recommend placing heavy objects as far forwards as possible (i.e. near the cab).
We recommend immobilising the load by firmly securing it using the stowing rings present on the floor.

Load retaining partition



On the floor, behind the front seats, a vertical partition protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.

Steel or glazed partitions separate the loading area from the cab.

Recommendations on loading

! The weight of the load must comply with the Gross Train Weight (GTW).
For more information on **Engine technical data and towed loads**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If you are using a carrying system (roof bars/roof rack), comply with the maximum loads associated with this system.
For more information on **Roof bars/Roof rack**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Make sure that the size, shape and volume of the loads carried are compatible with the highway code and safety regulations and do not impair the driver's field of vision.

! The load must be evenly distributed in the loading area so as not to interfere with driving the vehicle.
Place the load close to the side wall panels, or push it against the side wall panels between the wheel arches.
However, it is recommended that heavy objects are placed as close to the cab as possible as a precaution in case of sharp braking.

! Firmly secure all parts of the load using the stowing rings on the floor of the loading area.
For more information on the **Interior fittings** and in particular on the stowing rings, refer to the corresponding section.

! To avoid the risk of injury or accident, the load must be made stable so that it cannot slide, tip over, fall or be projected. To do this, use only retaining straps that conform to current standards (DIN, for example).
For more information on putting straps in place, refer to the manufacturer's user guide.
To prevent the load from sliding, there must not be any empty spaces between the load items and the vehicle wall panels.
As well as the straps, optimise the stability of the load with stable handling equipment (wedges, rigid blocks of wood or padding).

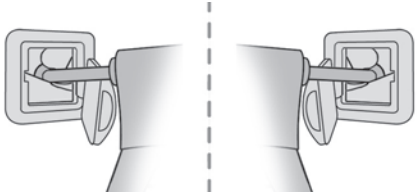
! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

Seating area fittings

High load retaining net

This allows the use of the entire loading capacity, up to the roof:
– behind the front seats in row 1, when the rear seats (and bench seats) in rows 2 and 3 are folded or removed,
– behind the rear seats (and bench seats) in row 2, when the rear seats (and bench seats) in row 3 are folded or removed.

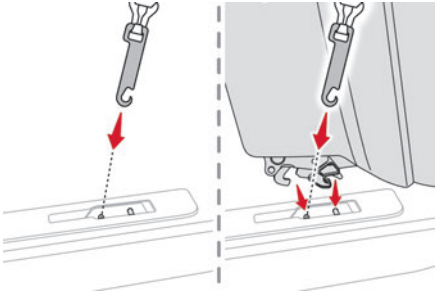
Upper fixings



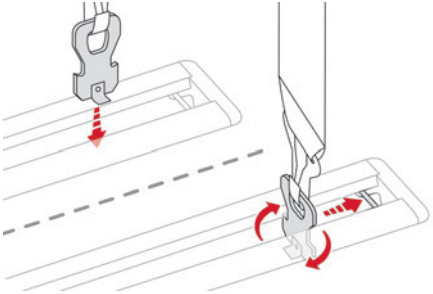
► Unclip the anchorage cover in the roof on each side.

Lower fixings (behind row 1)

If your vehicle has **fixed** one-piece bench seats or seats and bench seats:

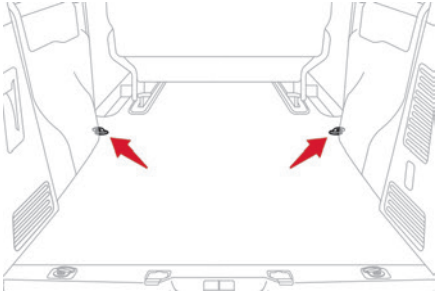


► On each side in row 2, insert the fixings in the floor anchorages (as shown above).
If your vehicle has seats and bench seats or individual seats on **rails**:



► On each side in row 2, insert the fixings in the floor anchorages then turn them a quarter turn to lock them in place (as shown above).
Place them as close as possible to the end of the rail.

Lower fixings (behind row 2)



► Use the stowing rings.

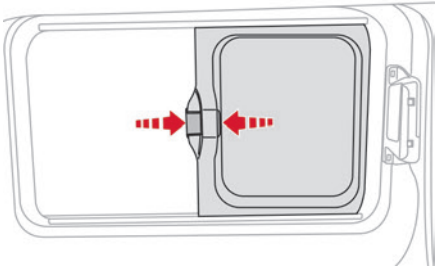
Fit the net

Unclip the upper fixing covers and secure the lower fixings (as previously described).
► Fold (table position) the seats and bench seats in rows 2 and 3 (according to equipment).
► Close the rear heating and air conditioning vents (depending on the equipment you have).
► Unroll the high load retaining net.
► Position the net upper fixings in the corresponding anchorages in the roof (first one side, then the other).
► Fully extend the straps.
► On each side, attach the bottom fixings of the net to the lower anchorages (behind row 1) or in the stowing rings (behind row 2).
► Tension the straps to extend the net.
► Check that the net is attached securely and properly extended.

! Never use the ISOFIX ring provided for fixing the strap of a child seat with Top Tether.

Rear windows in row 2

If fitted to your vehicle, the side windows in row 2 can be opened.

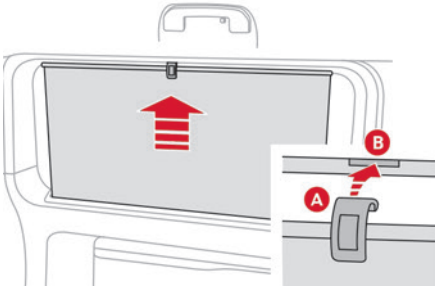


While driving, the windows must be closed or secured at one of the notches.
► Squeeze the two controls then move the window sideways.

i For more information on the **Child lock on rear windows**, refer to the corresponding section.

Side blinds

Fitted to the windows in row 2, these protect the passenger compartment from the sun's rays.



► Pull the tab **A** and attach the blind to the hook **B**.

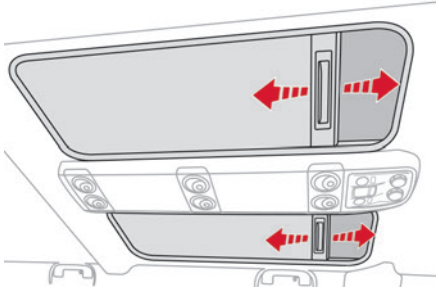
> Always guide the blind slowly, using the tab, when raising or lowering it.

Panoramic sunroof

This is fitted with two manual and independent blinds, which improve thermal and acoustic comfort.

Blinds

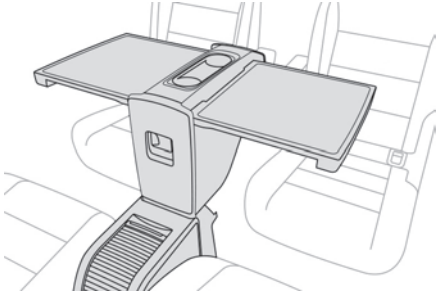
Opening/Closing



► Take one of the blinds by its grip and push it back or pull it forwards to the desired position.

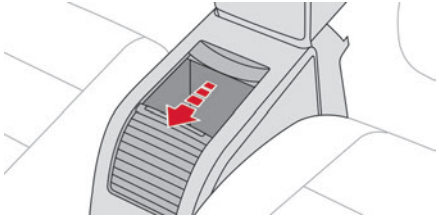
Retractable sliding table

Shine, **Business Lounge**



The table has a central storage space covered by a lid. When deployed, this device becomes a table with two table tops on which you can place objects. The central part has two cup/can holders and can also be used to hold small objects (e.g. credit card, pen).
The assembly is mounted on a runner allowing it to be positioned either in row 2 or row 3.

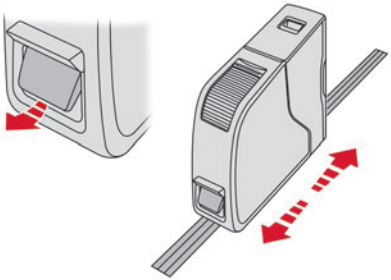
Storage



► Slide back the cover for access to 11 litres of storage space.

! The storage space can only support a maximum weight of 3 kg; do not exceed this maximum load in use.

Moving forward or backward

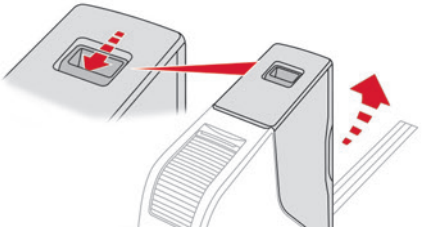


► Lift the control (without going beyond the point of resistance) and slide the assembly forwards or backwards.
► Release the control when it is in the desired position.
► Check that the table is secured on the runner. If this is not the case, move the assembly slightly to the next notch on the runner.

i You can move the table in both the open and stowed position. However, to ensure safety, it is advised that you handle the assembly in the stowed position.

! For the table to run smoothly, ensure that no objects are blocking the space used by the runner on the floor.
Before manoeuvring the table, check that there is nothing on the table.

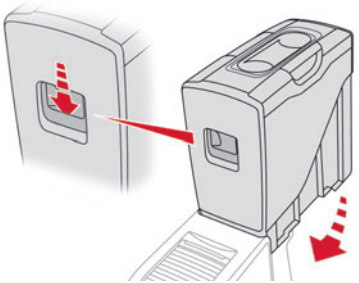
Unfolding



► Operate the control on the top and pull the table assembly up until it clicks into place.
► Pull each table top fully up then pivot them on each side into the horizontal position.

Folding

► Raise each table top, going beyond the point of resistance, to the vertical position.
► Push each table top down into its housing until it clicks into place.



► Push the control then tip the table assembly downward until it clicks into place.

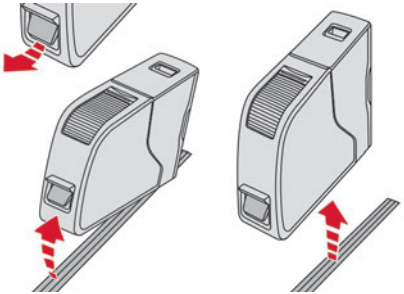
! Before stowing the table tops, check that they are clear. Before tipping the assembly down, check that the two table tops have clicked home in the low position and that there is nothing in the cup holder area (such as a can or pen).

Cup holders

Two cups or cans and small objects (such as a credit card, portable ashtray or pen) can be carried in the middle of the unfolded table.

! Liquids carried in an open vessel (a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting a risk. Be careful.
Never use the table in this position while the vehicle is being driven.

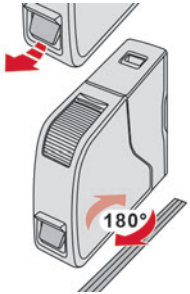
Removal



► Raise the control fully to release the anchorages and tip the table assembly forward.
► Remove the table assembly through the sliding door in row 2.

! Check that there is nothing in the space around the runner on the floor, so that the table disengages cleanly.

Changing the direction



With the table removed, you can turn it 180°.

i Remove a seat to make this easier.

Refitting

► Check that there is no object obstructing the runner and preventing proper locking.

► Check that the control is in the upper position (locking mechanism armed). If not, lift this control fully to arm the mechanism.
► Place the front of the table on the runner.
► Taking care not to interfere with the control, tip the assembly towards the rear until you hear it lock into place.
► Check that the assembly is fully locked into the runner. If not, slide the assembly gently along the runner until it meets the next notch.

! Check that the table is fully locked into the runner - risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

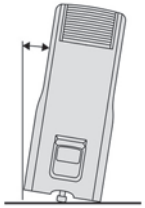
► Release the control until the guide locks into the runner.

! Be careful of passengers' feet when manoeuvring the assembly.

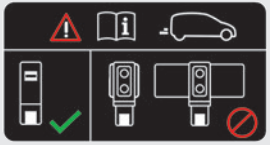
Storage off the runner

! If removing the table from the vehicle for storage, ensure that it is placed in a clean area, in order to avoid introducing any foreign bodies into the mechanisms.
The table must be placed outside the vehicle, on a flat and level surface, resting on the guide so as not to damage visible parts.

! Caution, when out of the vehicle, the table leans to the right or left when placed on a surface.



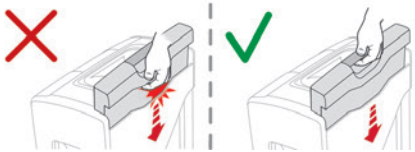
! Incorrect use of the table can cause serious injury.
Never use the table in the open or deployed position while the vehicle is in motion. In the event of sudden braking, any object placed on the table can become a projectile.
Ensure that the table is correctly stowed in the low position before setting off.
Never use the table tops as seats or lean on them.
A label attached to the side of the table serves as a reminder of this.



! Never place hot objects such as saucepans or frying pans on the table - risk of damaging the surface and starting a fire!

! When the table is deployed, each table top can support a maximum of 10 kg. If you exceed the maximum weight limit, you risk damaging part or all of the table.
Never lift the table when it is between individual seats; you risk damaging the table tops.

! Before moving the table or an individual seat forwards or backwards, make sure that the seat's backrest is upright and the table is stowed.



! When stowing the table tops, never place your hand inside the slide area - risk of trapping your fingers! Use the handle provided.

Heating and Ventilation

Advice

i Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

► To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
► Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
► Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
► If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system
► Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

► To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

Contains R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases
Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system may contain R134A fluorinated greenhouse gases. Gas capacity 0.5 kg (+/- 0.025 kg), GWP index 1430 (CO_2 equivalent: 0.715 t).

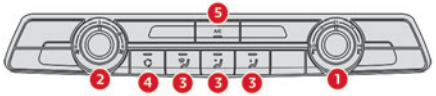
Stop & Start
The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

ECO driving mode
Selecting this mode reduces electrical energy consumption, but restricts the performance of the heating and air conditioning systems, although it does not deactivate them.

Heating

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Interior air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

Air flow

► Turn the thumbwheel **2** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

If you set the air flow control to the **minimum** position (off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Temperature

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** from "**LO**" (cold) to "**HI**" (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

Air distribution

► Pressing button **3** successively directs the air flow towards:
– windscreen, side windows and footwells,
– footwells,
– central vents, side vents and footwells,
– windscreen, side windows, central vents, side vents and footwells,
– central and side vents,
– windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– enhance the effectiveness of the demisting function in winter, above 3°C.

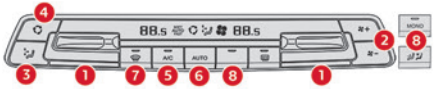
On/Off

► Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.
When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then restore the intake of exterior air.

> ℹ The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

> ! Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, misting).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.
6. Automatic comfort mode.
7. Visibility programme.
8. “Mono” function or Rear heating and air conditioning on/off (depending on version).

Automatic comfort mode

► Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** to toggle the mode.
The active mode appears in the display screen, as described below:

FAST AUTO	Ensures soft, quiet operation by limiting air flow.
AUTO	Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.
AUTO SOFT	Provides dynamic, effective air flow.

> ℹ When the engine is cold, the air flow will only increase to its optimum level gradually, to avoid distributing too much cold air.
> In cold weather, it prioritises the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

Manual mode

It is possible to make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting.
The other functions will still be automatically managed.
The "**AUTO**” symbol disappears if you change a setting.

Deactivating the system

► Press button **2** "**-**" until the fan symbol disappears.
This action switches off all of the functions of the system.
Temperature is no longer controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt, however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

► Press button **2** "**+**" to switch the system on again.

Temperature

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their preferences.
The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
► Push button **1** down to decrease the value or up to increase it.

> A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
> In addition, we recommend avoiding left/right setting differences of more than 3.

> On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is significantly colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

> For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.
> ► Push button **1** down until **"LO"** is displayed or up until **"HI"** is displayed.

"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).

► Press the corresponding button **8** to activate/deactivate the function.
The indicator lamp in the button is on when the function is activated.
The function is deactivated automatically if a passenger uses the temperature control.

Rear heating - air conditioning

► Press the corresponding button **8** to activate/deactivate the function.

> For more information, refer to the **Rear heating - air conditioning** section.

Visibility programme

► Press the "**visibility**" button **7** to demist or de-ice the windscreen and side windows more quickly.
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.
► Press the "**visibility**" button **7** again to stop the programme.
Or
► Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** to return to the automatic comfort programme.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It is used to:
– lower the temperature in summer,
– increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

On/Off

► Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.
When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then restore the intake of exterior air.

> The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

! Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, misting).

Air distribution

► Pressing button **3** successively directs the air flow towards:
– windscreen, side windows and footwells,
– footwells,
– central vents, side vents and footwells,
– windscreen, side windows, central vents, side vents and footwells,
– central and side vents,
– windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

Air flow

► Press the buttons **2** to increase/decrease the air flow.
The air flow symbol (a fan) appears. It is filled in or emptied gradually, according to the value set.

Interior air recirculation

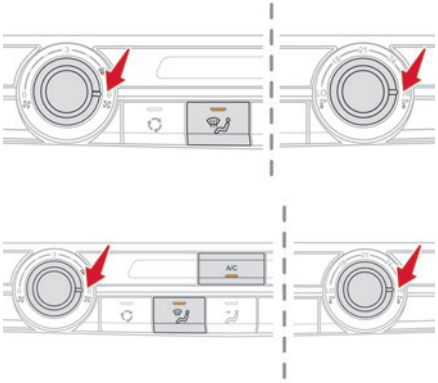
The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.

► Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

Front demisting - defrosting

These markings on the control panel indicate the positioning of the controls for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

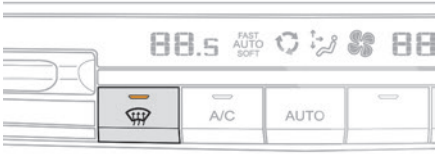
Heating or manual air conditioning



► Set the air flow, temperature and air distribution controls to the appropriately marked positions.

A/C ► For air conditioning, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

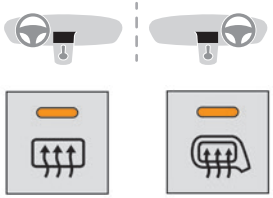
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



► Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows more quickly.
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

AUTO ► To turn it off, press this button again or press "**AUTO**".
The system restarts with the values in use before it was deactivated.

Demisting/de-icing the rear screen and/or the door mirrors

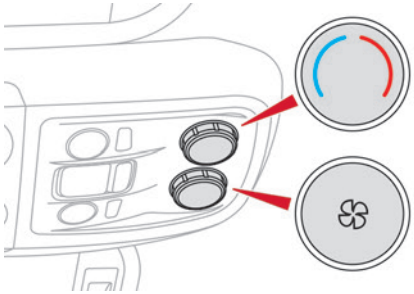


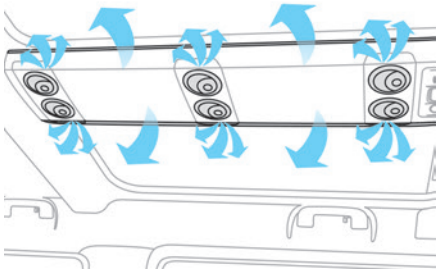
► Press one of these buttons to switch on/off rear screen and door mirror demisting/de-icing (depending on version).
The indicator lamp in the button comes **on** when the function is **activated**.
Demisting/de-icing switches off automatically to prevent excessive power consumption.

Switch off demisting/de-icing as soon as you no longer consider it necessary, as decreased power consumption in turn reduces energy consumption.

Demisting/de-icing only operates with the engine running.

Rear heating - air conditioning





If your vehicle is fitted with a rear air conditioning unit located in the roof, this system distributes conditioned and heated air via a distribution rail and individual outlets.

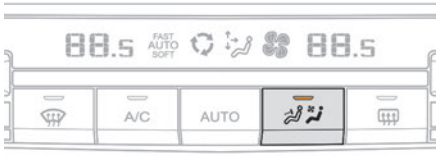
Air flow

► Turn the dial to increase or decrease the air flow.

Comfort temperature

– Turn the thumbwheel from blue (cold) to red (hot) to modulate the temperature to your liking.
This control simultaneously adjusts the temperature and the location of the air delivery:
– blue: the air is delivered mainly at roof level,
– red: the air is delivered mainly by the vent located in row 3 on the right.

Activation/Deactivation



Depending on version, this button is accessible at the front, from the dual-zone automatic air conditioning control panel.

► Press this button to activate/deactivate the operation of the rear controls.

Additional heating/ ventilation system

Only available for Diesel vehicles.

Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.

This indicator lamp is lit while the system is programmed or set in operation remotely via the remote control.
It flashes during the whole duration of the heating and goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when stopped using the remote control.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

With a MyCitroën Drive, use the remote control to start/stop the additional heating.
With a Bluetooth® audio system or a MyCitroën Play, use the remote control to start/stop the additional heating and/or adjust the pre-heating times.

With Bluetooth® audio system

► Press the **MENU** button to access the main menu.
► Select "**Pre-heat. / Pre-ventil.**".
► Select "**Activation**" and, if necessary, for programming, **“Parameters**".
► Select "**Heating**" to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.

► Select:
- the first clock to set/save the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,
- the second clock to set/save a second time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,

> Using these two clocks and depending on the season you can, for example, select one or the other start time.
> A message on the screen confirms your choice.

With MyCitroën Play

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Then press "**Programmable heating/ ventilation**".
► Select the "**Status**" tab to activate/deactivate the system.
► Select the "**Other settings**" tab to choose the "**Heating**" mode, to heat the engine and passenger compartment, or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.
► Then set/save the time at which the preheating temperature will be reached for each selection.

Press this button to save.

With MyCitroën Drive

In the **Applications > Car Apps** menu:

► Select **Temperature conditioning**.
► Press the **Status** tab to activate/deactivate the system.
► Press the **Settings** tab to select **Heating** mode to heat the engine and passenger

compartment or **Ventilation** to ventilate the passenger compartment.
► Then programme/save the activation time for each selection.
► Press **OK** to confirm.

> You must allow at least 60 minutes between programming operations.

> Depending on the outside temperature, a certain amount of pre-conditioning time is necessary in order to reach the programmed temperature by the stored activation time. This pre-conditioning time lasts up to 45 min.

Long-range remote control

This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance.
The remote control has a range of about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.

On

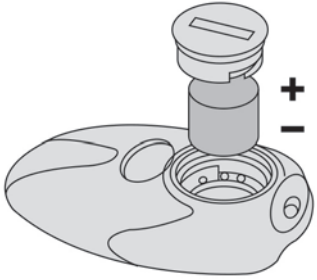
► Pressing and holding this button starts the heating immediately (confirmed by the green indicator lamp coming on briefly).

Switching off

OFF ► Pressing and holding this button stops the heating immediately (confirmed by the temporary illumination of the red indicator lamp).
The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal.
Then repeat the command after having changed location.

Changing the battery

The indicator lamp in the remote control will change to orange if the battery charge is low.
If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



► Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.

> Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

> If the system is switched on using the long-range remote control, the maximum heating duration is around 45 min.

> The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged.
> The heating is activated provided that:
> – the battery charge and the fuel level are sufficient,
> – the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle,
> – 60 minutes have elapsed between two heating requests.

> Programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle fuel tank. Before use, make sure that you have sufficient fuel. If the fuel tank is on reserve, you are strongly recommended not to programme the heating.

The additional heating must always be switched off while refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

! To avoid the risk of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) - Risk of fire!

! Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.
Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces - Risk of burns!

Independent additional heating

Depending on the country of sale, this is an additional and independent system which heats the hot water circuit of the Diesel engine to improve comfort and to raise the temperature of the cold engine. It improves demisting and defrosting performance. With the engine idling or the vehicle stationary, it is normal to notice a high-pitched whistling and some emissions of smoke or odour.
The temperature near the heating system must not exceed 120°C. A higher temperature (e.g. in a paint oven) could damage the components of electronic circuits.
The additional heating is supplied by the vehicle's fuel tank. Make sure that the low fuel warning lamp is not on.

i To avoid the risks of poisoning or suffocation, the additional heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.

! Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (for example: dry grass, fallen leaves, paper, etc.) - risk of fire!

i Have the additional heating checked at least once a year, at the beginning of winter.
For maintenance and repairs, you must only contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Temperature pre-conditioning (Electric)

This function allows you to programme the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

Programming

With Bluetooth® audio system

Temperature pre-conditioning is not available with the Bluetooth® audio system.

With the MyCitroën Play or MyCitroën Drive system

Programming can be carried out from a smartphone using the **MyCitroën App** application.
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

With MyCitroën Drive system

In the **Applications** menu:

Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Select **Temperature conditioning**.

► Press **+** to add a programme.

► Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.
► Press **ON** to activate this programme.
The temperature pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is connected (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.

> You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system.
> To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.

> The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.

Operating conditions

– The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked**.
– When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 50%.
– When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring programme is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the programme will be deactivated.

Courtesy lamp(s)

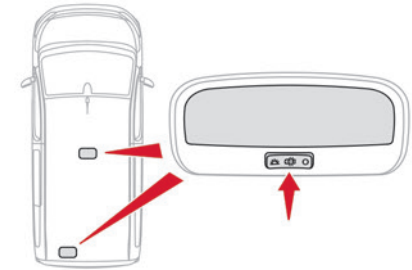
Front: comes on when one of the front or rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).
Rear or row 2 and row 3: comes on when one of the rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).

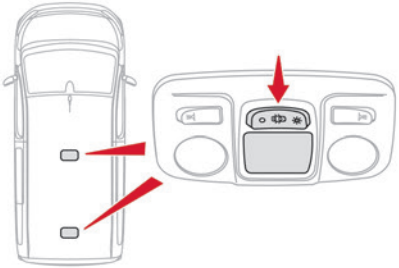
Always lit, ignition on.

Always off.

Front

Rear





Automatic switching on/off

The front courtesy lamp comes on when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
All courtesy lamps come on when the vehicle is unlocked, when one of the corresponding doors is opened and when locating the vehicle using the remote control.
They fade to off after the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is locked.

! Take care not to allow objects to come into contact with the courtesy lamp.

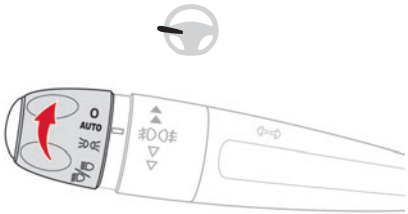
Individual reading lamp

If fitted to the vehicle, these are switched on and off by means of a manual switch.
With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.

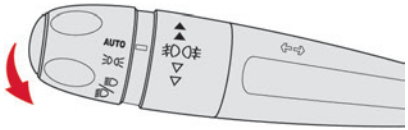
Lighting control stalk

Main lighting



0	Lamps off (ignition off)/ Daytime running lamps (engine running)
AUTO	Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lamps
	Sidelamps only
	Dipped or main beam headlamps

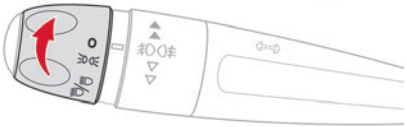
Headlamp dipping



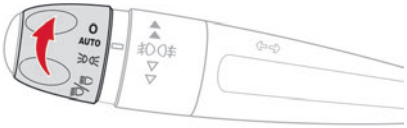
► Pull the lighting control stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps. In lamps off and sidelamps modes, pull the lighting control stalk to switch the main beam headlamps on directly ("headlamp flash").

> i Operation of the selected lighting is confirmed by the illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp.

Without AUTO lighting



With AUTO lighting



Foglamps

Rear foglamp

It only works if the sidelamps are on.

► Rotate the ring forwards/backwards to turn it on/off.
When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

Front foglamps/Rear foglamps

They operate with the sidelamps, dipped or main beam headlamps on.

► Rotate the ring forwards:
- once to switch on the front foglamps,
- a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.

► Turn in the opposite direction to switch off.
If the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.
► Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

! Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).
Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

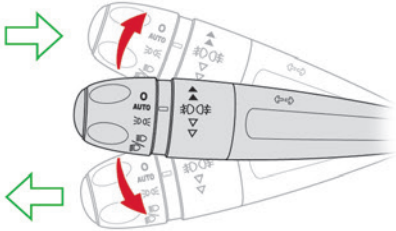
Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition
To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "**0**" position - lamps off, then to the desired position.
If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.
They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off
When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Travelling abroad
If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Direction indicators



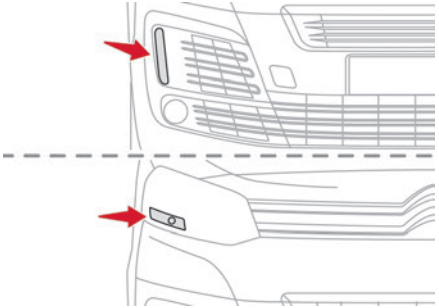
► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

► Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps



If the vehicle is so equipped, they come on automatically when the engine is started, when the lighting control stalk is in position "**0**" or "**AUTO**".

Automatic headlamp illumination

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come

on if rain is detected, at the same time as the automatic rain sensitive wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the rain/sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lamps come on and this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

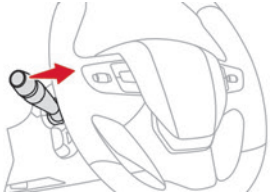
i In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

i The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

Guide-me-home lighting

Manual



► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function.
Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Automatic

With the "Automatic illumination of lamps" function activated (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position) and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.
With the ring in the "**AUTO**" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

With audio system or touch screen

The activation, deactivation and duration of guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote operation of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated when the lighting control is in the "**AUTO**" position and the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor is low.

Switching on

Press this button on the remote control or on one of the front door handles with the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.
The dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming

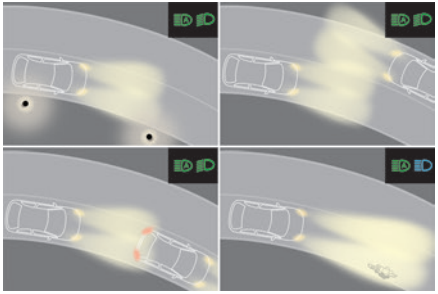
With audio system or touch screen

The activation, deactivation and duration of the welcome lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Automatic headlamp dipping

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems**.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

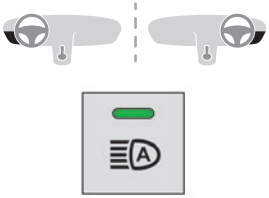


! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h).
When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

With audio system



► To activate or deactivate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp in the button is **on** when the function is **activated**.

With touch screen

The settings are adjusted via the vehicle configuration menu.
► Then put the lighting control stalk ring in the "AUTO" or "Dipped/main beam position".

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

► A "headlamp flash" pauses the function and the lighting system switches to "automatic illumination of lamps" mode:
– If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.
– If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.
► To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam.

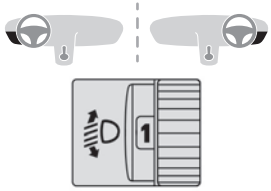
i Flashing the headlamps does not deactivate the system.
The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.

i The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:
– When visibility conditions are poor (snowfall, heavy rain, etc.).
– If the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or obscured (for example, by a sticker).
– If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.
When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.
The system is not able to detect:
– Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.

– Vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example, vehicles driving behind a safety barrier on a motorway).
– Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid inconvenience to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 Empty (initial setting)
1 Partial load
2 Medium load
3 Maximum authorised load
4 5 6 Not used

0 1 or 2 people in the front seats (initial setting)
1 5 people
2 6 to 9 people
3 Driver + maximum authorised load
4 5 6 Not used

Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility inside the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on

At night, the front roof lighting and panoramic roof lighting (if fitted to your vehicle) comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.
The ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

Programming

With audio system or touch screen

The activation, deactivation and the choice of brightness of the ambience lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

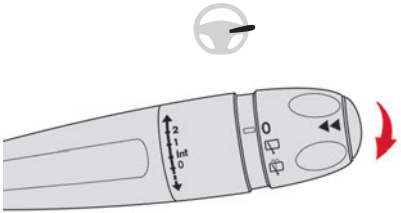
Wiper control stalk

i Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

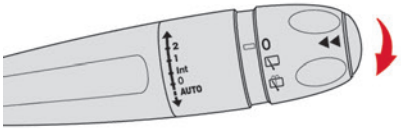
! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

i After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
Int	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)
0	Switching off
↓	Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO Automatic wiping

Refer to the corresponding section.

> ℹ After the ignition has been switched off, the wipers may move slightly at the foot of the windscreen.

> ℹ If the ignition has been switched off with the windscreen wipers active, you must operate the control stalk again to reactivate wiping when the ignition is switched on again (unless the ignition was off for less than a minute).

Windscreen wash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

The screenwash then the windscreen wipers operate for a pre-determined time.

> ℹ With automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closure of the air intake to protect the passenger compartment from any odour.

> ! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.
> Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products.
> Never top up with water.

Low screenwash fluid level

When the low level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

It comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.

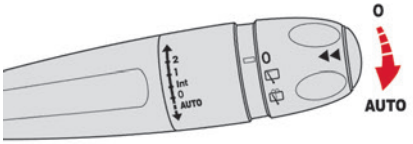
Refill the screenwash reservoir (or have it refilled) the next time you stop.

Automatic windscreen wipers

In **AUTO** mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically and adapt to the intensity of the rainfall.

Detection is via a rain/brightness sensor, located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switching on



► Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.
This indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

► Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or set the control stalk to another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).
This indicator lamp goes off on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

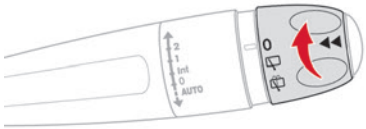
Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor. When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.

In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Rear wiper



Off.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, if the windscreen wipers are operating, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically (activated by default).

Activation/Deactivation

With audio system or touch screen

The system's settings are adjusted via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to the tailgate, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu.

Rear screenwash

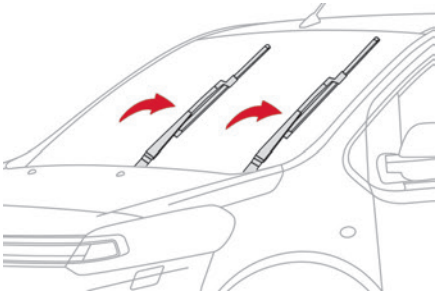
► Turn the ring as far as it will go and hold it in position.
The screenwash and the wiper operate for as long as the ring remains turned.
A final wiping cycle is performed when screen washing ends.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
– handle them with care.
– clean them regularly using soapy water.
– avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen.
– replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

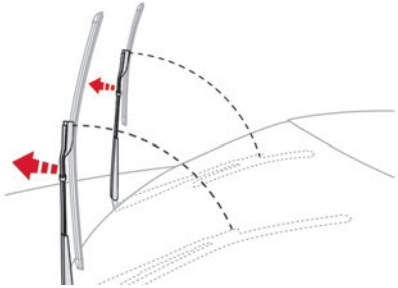
► Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

► To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/Refitting at the front



► Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.

► Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

> ! Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
> Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

► Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

> i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

► Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.

► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.

► Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.

► Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

► Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

► Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.

► Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.

► Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.

► Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

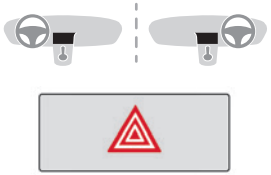
! Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! **Installing electrical accessories:**
– The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
– As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
– Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**
Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i **Declarations of conformity for radio equipment**
The relevant certificates are available on the brand website:
http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/

Hazard warning lamps

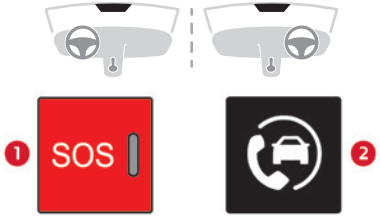


► Pressing this red button causes all the direction indicators to flash.
They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.
They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Emergency or assistance call



1. Localised Emergency Call
2. Localised Assistance Call

eCall (SOS)

Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.
The eCall (SOS) system provides direct access to the emergency services and is built directly into the vehicle.
According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc.
The eCall (SOS) system is activated by default.
► In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.
The lit indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services*.
The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services**.
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.
The indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, irrespective of the deployment of any airbags.

i This system is a public service and is free of charge.

Operation of the system

– Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
– The indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
– The indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.
– If the indicator lamp does not come on when the ignition is switched on, this also means that there is a system malfunction.
If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

i A system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

i **Data processing**
All processing of personal information by the "Localised Emergency Call" system (PE112) complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679.
Personal information processing is strictly limited to the management of the "Localised Emergency Call" system used with the “112” European single emergency call number.
The "Localised Emergency Call" system is able to collect and process only the following

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
** Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, most recent three locations and direction of travel, and a timestamped log file recording the automatic activation of the system.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority reception and handling of calls to the “112” emergency number.

Data storage
Data contained in the system’s memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.
The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle’s three most recent locations are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

Access to data
You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned Directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort. You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

Localised Assistance Call

► If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*).
► Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and CITROËN.
It can be configured in the **Settings** touch screen menu.

By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "ASSISTANCE" button to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify them to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

* Depending on the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Horn

► Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Pedestrian horn (Electric)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching.
The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear.
This function cannot be deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:
– Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
– Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
– Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
– Dynamic stability control (DSC).
– Intelligent traction control.
– Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.
ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.
► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

i Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.
The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.
You must stop the vehicle.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

! **After an impact**
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a

reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil, etc.), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.
However, it is recommended that the systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

Only the ASR system can be deactivated from the touch screen.

Deactivating using the button or Advanced Grip Control

Press this button or turn the thumbwheel to this position.
The indicator lamp in the button or thumbwheel comes on: the DSC/ASR systems no longer have an effect on engine operation.

Deactivating using the touch screen

In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, deactivate the ASR system.
A confirmation message is displayed and this warning lamp on the instrument panel comes on.
The ASR system no longer acts on the operation of the engine.

Reactivating using the button or Advanced Grip Control

Press this button.
Or
Turn the thumbwheel to this position.
The indicator lamp in the button or thumbwheel goes off.

Reactivating using the touch screen

In the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu, activate the ASR system.
A confirmation message is displayed and this warning lamp on the instrument panel goes off.

These systems are reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched off, or at speeds over 31 mph (50 km/h).
Below 31 mph (50 km/h), these systems must be reactivated manually.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

ASR/DSC
These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by CITROËN dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow

or all-season tyres is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle.
All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Intelligent traction control ("Snow motion")

(Depending on version)
The intelligent traction control system helps improve grip when driving on snow.
This system detects situations of poor surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, the system limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for the vehicle.

The use of winter tyres is strongly recommended on slippery surfaces.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer snaking.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.
The electronic stability control system (ESC) must not have any faults.
The vehicle speed must be between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h).
If the system detects that the trailer is snaking, it applies the brakes to stabilise the trailer and reduces engine power, if necessary, to slow the vehicle (indicated by the flashing of this warning lamp on the instrument panel and the brake lamps coming on).
For information on weights and towed loads, refer to the **Engine technical data and towed loads** section or your vehicle's registration certificate.
To ensure safe driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
To continue towing a trailer, reduce speed and drive carefully!
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The trailer stability control system provides an extra safety feature under normal driving conditions, when following the recommendations for use of trailers and current legislation in force in your country. It must not encourage the driver to take extra risks, such as using a trailer in unsuitable conditions of operation (e.g. excessive load, exceeded nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system) or driving at excessive speed.
In certain cases, the system may not detect trailer snaking, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

Advanced Grip Control

(Depending on version)
A special, patented traction control system, which improves driveability on snow, mud and sand.
This system, optimised for operation in a range of conditions, enables you to manoeuvre in most slippery conditions (encountered during normal passenger car use).
When combined with all-season Peak Mountain Snow Flake tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and driveability.
The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to harness the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.
A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.

An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes

Standard (ESC)

This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow

This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.
(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.
When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

Deactivation

You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "**OFF**" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the operation of the engine or of the brakes in the event of a change of trajectory.
These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) and whenever the ignition is switched on.

Recommendations
Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:
– crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
– driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
– crossing a stream.

Seat belts

Inertia reel
The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls

over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

Force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

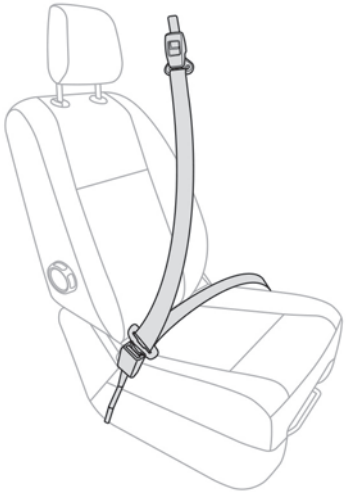
! In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

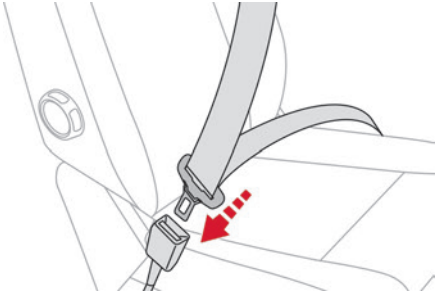
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Fastening



► Pull the strap, then insert the tongue into the buckle.

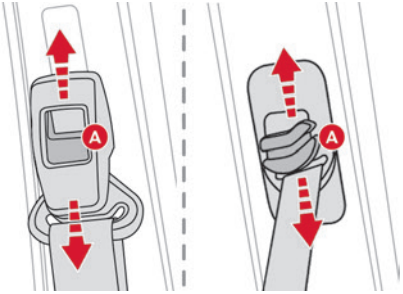
► Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening

► Press the red button on the buckle.

► Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

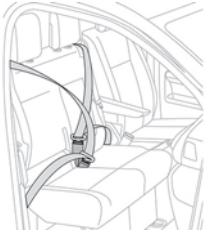
Height adjustment



► To lower the attachment point, while moving control **A** downwards, slide the assembly down to the desired position.
► To raise the attachment point, slide the assembly up to the desired position.

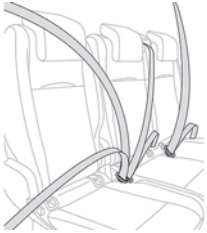
> The upper part of the diagonal strap should lie across the shoulder.

Two-seat front bench seat



If the vehicle is fitted with a front bench seat, ensure that each seat belt is used with its correct buckle.
Do not interchange the driver's seat belt or buckle with the centre seat belt or buckle.

Rear seat belts



A 3-seat bench seat (one-piece or split 1/3 seat - 2/3 bench seat) is fitted with three-point seat belts and inertia reels on the outer seats.
The centre seat has a seat belt guide and inertia reel fitted into the seat backrest.
The seat belt inertia reels for the outer seats in row 2 are fitted with force limiters.
The seats in row 3 have three-point seat belts with inertia reels.

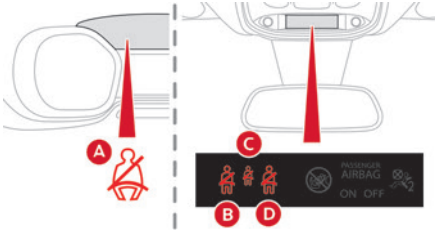
> For rows 2 and 3, connect each seat belt to its correct buckle.
> Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat.
> When folding the side seats or placing the backrests in the table position, avoid trapping the belt for the centre seat.
> After folding or moving a rear seat or bench seat, ensure that the seat belt has reeled in correctly and that the buckle is ready to receive the belt tongue.
> When removing/repositioning the outer seats or when accessing row 3, avoid trapping the centre belt.

With individual seats

Shine, **Business Lounge**

They are fitted with three-point seat belts with guides and belt inertia reels built into the backrests.

Seat belt(s) warning lamps



A. Front seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
B. Left-hand seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
C. Centre seat belt unfastened warning lamp (if your vehicle is fitted with a 2-seat front bench seat).
D. Right-hand seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp (if your vehicle is fitted with individual front seats).
Right-hand seat belt unfastened warning lamp (if your vehicle is fitted with a 2-seat front bench seat).

On switching on the ignition, the warning lamp(s) come(s) on if the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.
At speeds above approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flash(es) for 2 minutes, accompanied by an audible signal.
Once these 2 minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp(s) remain(s) on until the driver or the passenger fastens their seat belt.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly.
To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

! **Installation**
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
– be tightened as close to the body as possible.
– be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
– must only be used to secure one person.
– not show signs of tearing or fraying.
– not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

! **Recommendations for children**
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

! **Maintenance**
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

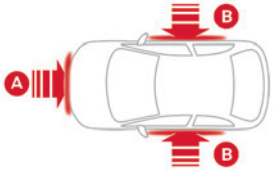
Airbags

General information

System designed to help improve the safety of the occupants sitting in the front seats and the rear outer seats, in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.
Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:
– In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
– In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

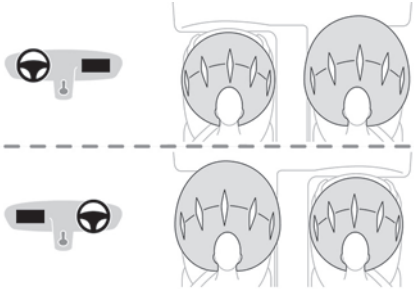
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone
B. Side impact zone

i When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags

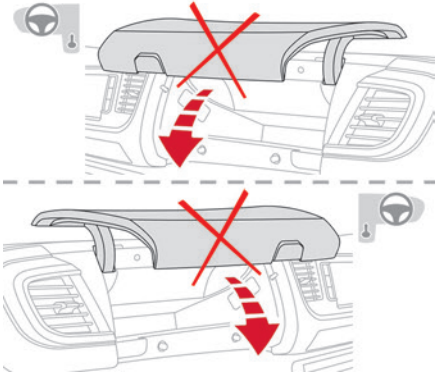


This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

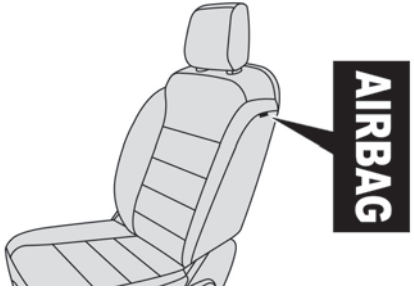
They are deployed, except for the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a violent front impact applied to all or part of front impact zone **A**.
The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, on the driver's side, and the dashboard, on the passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

* For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.



When driving, keep the storage compartment closed. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Lateral airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

They are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant's abdomen and head and the associated door trim panel.

Curtain airbags (Row 2 & 3)

Feel, **Shine**, **Business Lounge**

If fitted to your vehicle, this is a system that contributes towards greater protection for passengers (with the exception of the centre seats) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

They are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the outer rear passenger and the windows.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.
Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do

not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Front airbags
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Feel, **Shine**, **Business Lounge**

Curtain airbags
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as these help to secure the curtain airbags.

Child seats

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:
– In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than 1.5 metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
– **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
– **Children weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:
– "**rearward facing**" up to the age of 3,
– "**forward facing**" over the age of 3.

! Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

! An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! **Installing a booster seat**
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! **Additional protections**
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:
– A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
– A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
– The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

Row 2

Forward-facing or rearward-facing

► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
► Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.
► Adjust the rear seat to the fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.

i Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the vehicle's front seat.

Row 3

If a child seat is installed on a passenger seat in the third row, move the seats in the second row forward and straighten the backrests so that the child seat and the child's legs do not touch the seats in the second row.

Child seat at the front

► Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest** and **fully back longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

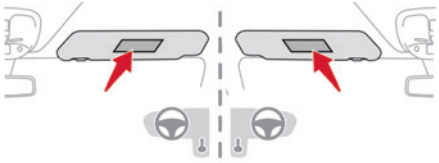
"Forward facing"

! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

"Rearward facing"

! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed**.

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

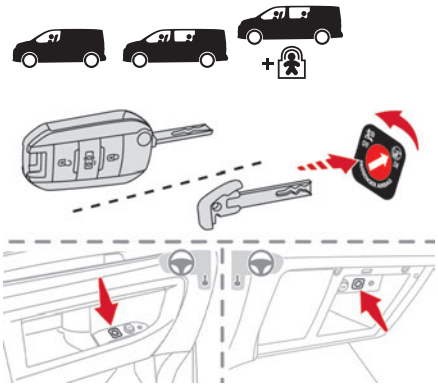
Deactivating the front passenger airbag

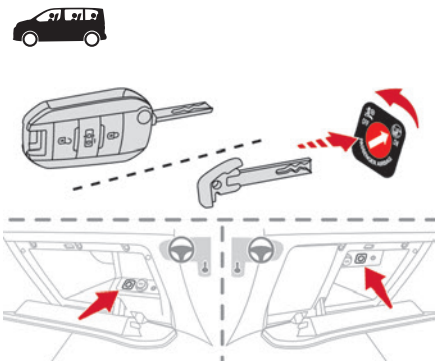
! To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

! **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control**
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat or bench seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located inside the glove box.





With the ignition off:

► To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "**OFF**" position.

► To reactivate it, turn the key to the "**ON**" position.

When the ignition is switched on:

This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal deactivation.

Or

This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal activation.

Recommended child seats

Range of child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

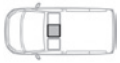
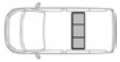
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
L1 "RÖMER Baby-Safe" Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

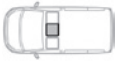
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg

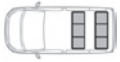
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg
L5 "RÖMER KIDFIX 2R" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. A version with a removable backrest may be used for children weighing more than 25 kg. However, for better protection, use a booster seat with backrest for all children weighing up to 36 kg. Only suitable for installation on the side rear seats.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

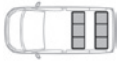
In accordance with European regulations, the table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(a)** according to the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.

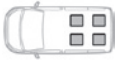
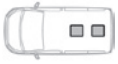
		Weight of the child/indicative age			
Seats		**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Cab/Row 1 (c) (f)					
	Individual seat, passenger seat	**U**			
	Bench seat, outer seat	**U**			
	Bench seat, centre seat	**X**			
Row 2 (d) (Fixed and folding bench seat)					
	Rear seats	**U**			

Combi		**Weight of the child**/indicative age			
Seats		**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)					
	Individual seat, passenger seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**UF**			
	Individual seat, passenger seat with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		
	Bench seat, centre seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**X**			
	Bench seat, outer seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**UF**			
	Bench seat, outer seat with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**UF**		

Combi		**Weight of the child**/indicative age			
Seats		**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 2 and 3					
	Rear seats	**U**			

Business, **Feel**		**Weight of the child**/indicative age			
Seats		**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)					
	Passenger seat (electric adjustments) with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**UF**			
	Passenger seat (electric adjustments) with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**U**		
	Passenger seat (without height adjustment) with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**UF**			
	Passenger seat (without height adjustment) with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**U**		

Business, **Feel**		**Weight of the child**/indicative age			
Seats		**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 2 (d) and 3 (d)					
	Rear seats	**U**			

Shine, **Business Lounge**		**Weight of the child**/indicative age			
Seats		**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)					
	Passenger seat (electric adjustments) with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**"	**UF**			
	Passenger seat (electric adjustments) with passenger airbag activated "**ON**"	**X**	**U**		
Row 2 (d) and 3 (d)					
	Outer seats	**UF**			
	Centre seat (e)	**UF**			

U: Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.

UF: Seat position suitable for the installation a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.

X: Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat for the specified weight group.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat(s) or the seats in row 3.

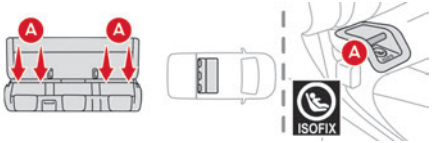
(c) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.

(d) To install a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" child seat on a rear seat, move the seats in front of it forward, then straighten their backrests to allow sufficient room for the child seat and the child's legs.

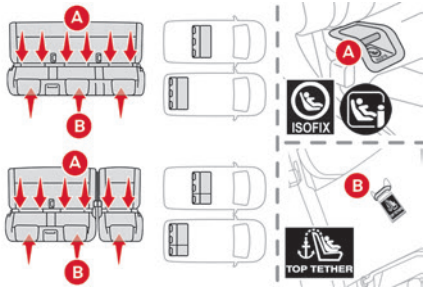
(e) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.

(f) When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, the child risks being severely injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

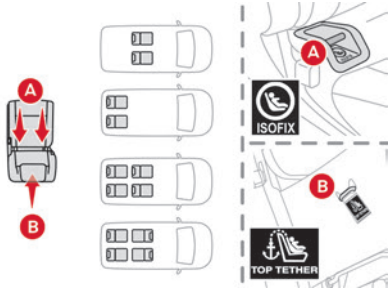
"ISOFIX" mountings and i-Size



Combi, **Business**, **Feel**



Shine, **Business Lounge**



The vehicle has been approved in accordance with the latest ISOFIX and i-Size regulations.
If fitted to the vehicle, approved ISOFIX and i-Size fixings can be identified by the labels attached to them.
There are three rings for each seat:

– Two front rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by an "ISOFIX" or "i-Size" marking,
– If fitted to your vehicle, a rear ring **B**, called a Top Tether, is located behind the vehicle's seat and is used to secure the upper strap and is indicated by a "Top Tether" marking.
The Top Tether secures the upper strap of child seats fitted with them. In case of frontal impact, this device limits the extent to which the child seat can tilt forward.
This ISOFIX and i-Size mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of a child seat inside the vehicle.
ISOFIX and i-Size child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured to the two front rings **A**.
Some child seats also have an upper strap which is attached to rear ring **B**.
To secure the child seat to the Top Tether:
– remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
– pass the strap of the child seat over the top of the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods,
– attach the hook of the upper strap to rear ring **B**,
– tighten the upper strap.

! Incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle can compromise a child's safety in the event of an accident.
Strictly follow the fitting instructions provided in the installation guide supplied with the child seat.

i For information on the various options for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

"RÖMER Baby-Safe and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
Suitable for forward-facing installation only. Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down. This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

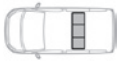
Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

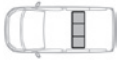
		Weight of the child/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**				
		F	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
ISOFIX size category													
	Individual passenger seat or 2-seat bench seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not ISOFIX**											

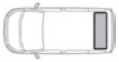
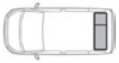
		Weight of the child/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**				
		F	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
Row 2 with 2-seat bench seat in row 1													
	Outer seats	**X**							**IUF**			**IUF***	**X**
	Centre seat	**Not ISOFIX**											
Row 2 with individual seats in row 1													
	Outer seats	**IL**		**IL** (6)	**IL**		**IL** (6)	**IL**	**IUF**			**X**	
	Centre seat	**Not ISOFIX**											

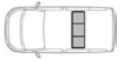
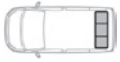
* Fixed bench seat only

Combi		**Weight of the child**/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**				
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
Row 1 (a)													
	Individual passenger seat or 2-seat bench seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not ISOFIX**											
Row 2													
	Outer seats and centre seat (b)	**X**	**IL** (3)	**IL** (2)		**IL**	**IL** (2)		**IUF, IL**				

Combi		**Weight of the child**/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**				
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
Row 3													
	Fixed one-piece bench seat, outer seats and centre seat (b)				**X**					**IUF, IL**			**X**
	Seat and fixed rear bench seat, outer seats and centre seat (b)				**X**					**IUF, IL**			**X**

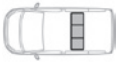
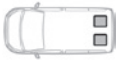
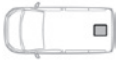
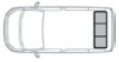
Business		**Weight of the child**/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**				
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
Row 1 (a)													
	Individual passenger seat or 2-seat bench seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not ISOFIX**											
Row 2													
	Rear seats	**X**	**IL** (1-3)	**IL** (2)		**IL**	**IL** (2)		**IUF, IL**				

Business		**Weight of the child**/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**				
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
Row 3													
	Fixed one-piece bench seat, rear seats	**X**							**IUF, IL**				**X**
	Seat and fixed rear bench seat, rear seats	**X**							**IUF, IL**				**X**

Feel		**Weight of the child**/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**				
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
Row 1 (a)													
	Passenger seat with passenger airbag deactivated **"OFF"** or activated **"ON"**	**Not ISOFIX**											
Row 2													
	Rear seats	**IL**							**IUF, IL**				
Row 3													
	Rear seats	**IL** (1-4)		**X**	**IL** (4)		**X**	**IL** (4)	**IUF, IL**				**X**

Shine, **Business Lounge**		**Weight of the child**/indicative age											
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old						
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**				
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
Row 1 (a)													
	Passenger seat with passenger airbag deactivated **"OFF"** or activated **"ON"**	**Not ISOFIX**											
Row 2													
	Seat behind driver or front passenger	**X**		**IL** (5)	**IL**		**IL** (5)	**IL**	**IUF, IL**			**IUF*, IL**	
	Centre seat (b)	**X**		**IL** (5)	**IL**		**IL** (5)	**IL**	**IUF, IL**				

* Except short (XS) vehicle version.

Shine, **Business Lounge**		**Weight of the child**/indicative age												
		Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old							
Type of ISOFIX child seat		**Carrycot** (1)		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**					
ISOFIX size category		**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**	**B2**	**B3**
	Rear seats	**IL** (1-5)		**IL**			**IL**		**IUF, IL**				
Row 3													
	Outer seats	**X**		**IL** (4)		**IL**	**IL** (4)		**IUF, IL**				
	Centre seat (b)	**X**		**IL** (4)		**IL**	**IL** (4)		**IUF, IL**				
	Rear seats	**IL** (1-4)		**X**	**IL** (4)		**X**	**IL** (4)	**IUF, IL**				**X**

IUF: Seat position suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL: Seat position suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix Semi-Universa**L** seat which is either:
– "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
– "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
– a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

X: Seat position not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat or carrycot for the specified weight group.

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.

(b) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.

For information on securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

(1) Installing a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.

(2) Installation possible only behind the driver's seat.

(3) Installation possible only behind the driver's seat with individual passenger seat.

(4) The seat in row 2 must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 3 and the seat immediately in front.

(5) The front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 2 and the seat immediately in front.

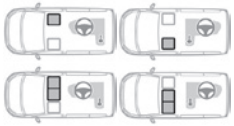
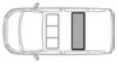
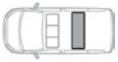
(6) The front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the child in row 2 and the seat immediately in front (with the front seat adjusted to 2 notches ahead of the centre of the slide).

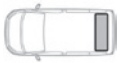
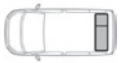
i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **A**.
These i-Size child seats also have:
– either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
– or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.
Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.
For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locations for i-Size child seats

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with i-Size approved ISOFIX mountings.

Seat			i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)		Passenger seat with passenger airbag deactivated "**OFF**" or activated "**ON**"	**Not i-Size**
Row 2	**With 2-seat bench seat in row 1**		
		Outer seats	**Not i-Size**
		Centre seat	**Not i-Size**
	With individual seats in row 1		
		Outer seats	**Not i-Size**
		Centre seat	**Not i-Size**
Combi, **Business**, **Feel** Row 2	**With 2-seat bench seat in row 1**		
		Fixed one-piece bench seat, outer seats and centre seat (b)	**i-UF**
		Seat and bench seat, outer seats and centre seat (b)	**i-UF**
	With individual seats in row 1		
		Fixed one-piece bench seat, outer seats and centre seat (b)	**i-U**
		Seat and bench seat, outer seats and centre seat (b)	**i-U**

Seat			i-Size restraint system
Combi, **Business**, **Feel** **Row 3**		Fixed one-piece bench seat, outer seats and centre seat (b)	**i-U** (c)
		Seat and bench seat, outer seats and centre seat (b)	**i-U** (c)
Shine, **Business Lounge** **Row 2 and 3**		Rear seats with seat and bench seat	**i-U** (c)
		Rear seats with 2 individual seats	**i-UF** (c, d) (Excluding group 0)
		Rear seats with 1 individual seat	**i-UF** (c, d) (Excluding group 0)

i-U: Suitable for forward facing and rearward facing "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.

i-UF: Only suitable for forward facing "Universal" i-Size restraint systems.

(a) Refer to the current legislation in the country in which you are driving before placing a child in this seat position.

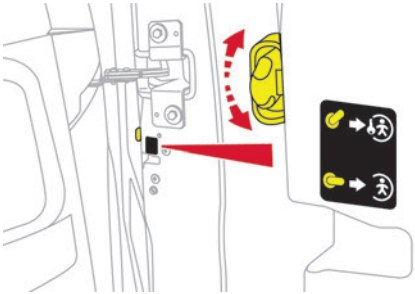
(b) The seat can be installed centrally in the vehicle; it then prevents the use of the outer seats.

(c) The seat in row 2 cannot be used when an i-Size child seat is installed immediately behind.

(d) Install an i-Size child restraint system only if seats are installed in forward direction.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the sliding side door using its interior lever.



Locking/Unlocking

► Rotate the control located on the edge of the side door **up** to **lock** it, or **down** to **unlock** it.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors (sliding side door(s), side-hinged rear doors or tailgate (depending on version)) using their interior controls.

This control prevents the opening of the rear doors using their interior handles and the use of the rear electric windows.

Activation/Deactivation

► With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock.
A message is displayed, confirming activation/deactivation of the child lock.
When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

ℹ In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated automatically.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock.

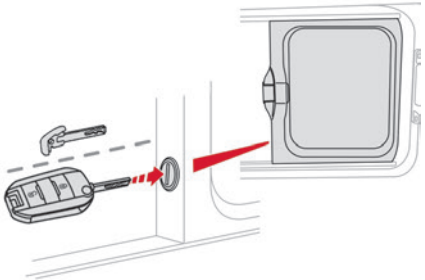
ℹ With the child lock activated, it is still possible to open the doors from outside.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Child lock on rear windows

This mechanical system prevents opening of the left-hand and/or right-hand rear side windows.



► The system is locked/unlocked using the remote control key or the back-up key for the Keyless Entry and Start system.

Driving recommendations

► Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
► Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
► Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
► Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
► During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.
To ensure the durability of the vehicle and for safety reasons, remember that certain precautionary measures must be taken when driving the vehicle:

Manoeuvre cautiously, at low speed

Manoeuvre slowly.
Before turning, check that there are no obstacles at mid-height along the sides.
Before reversing, check that there are no obstacles, particularly at high level behind the vehicle.
Be aware of the external dimensions, if ladders are fitted.

Drive the vehicle carefully

Take corners gently.
Anticipate the need to brake as the stopping distance is increased, particularly on wet or icy roads.
Be aware of the effect of side winds on the vehicle.

Maintenance

Inflate to the minimum pressure indicated on the label, or even over-inflate by 0.2 to 0.3 bar for long journeys.

Important!

! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! **Never drive with the parking brake applied**. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

! **Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).**The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! **Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge.**
This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

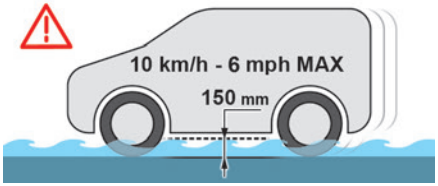
! Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

! **Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running**. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised**.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to your vehicle's electrical systems.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:
► Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
► Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
► Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
► Do not stop and do not switch off the engine.
On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Noise (Electric)

On the outside

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention. When manoeuvring, the driver must always check the vehicle's immediate surroundings. At speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), the pedestrian horn warns other road users of the vehicle's presence.

Cooling the traction battery
The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

On the inside

During use, you may hear certain perfectly normal noises specific to electric vehicles, such as:
– Traction battery relay when starting.
– Vacuum pump when braking.
– Vehicle tyres or aerodynamics when driving.
– Jolting and knocking noise during hill starts.

Towing

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.
At altitude: reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

New vehicle: do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are located as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted, without exceeding it.

Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid activating the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior

temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.
► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.
► Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.

If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the screen. The vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

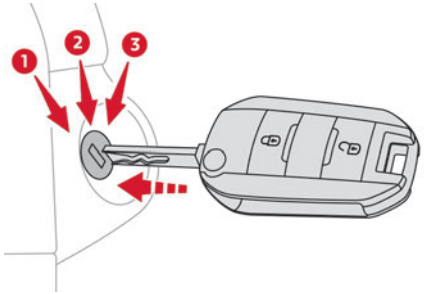
Starting/switching off the engine

Starting

The parking brake must be applied.

► **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal and keep the pedal down until the engine starts.
► **With an automatic gearbox**, place the selector in position **P** then depress the brake pedal.

With the conventional key / With the remote control key



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

► Insert the key into the ignition switch. The system recognises the starting code.
► Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

> In certain circumstances, you may have to turn the steering wheel firmly to move the wheels (if the wheels are against a kerb, for example).

► Turn the key to position **2**, Ignition On, to activate the engine pre-heating system.

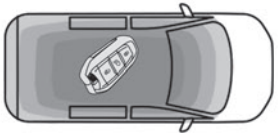
► Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then turn the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, to operate the starter motor until the engine

starts. As soon as the engine starts, release the key so it returns to position **2**.

The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already warm. In some climatic conditions, the following recommendations should be followed:
– In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.
– In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
– In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23 °C), to ensure correct operation and durability of your vehicle's mechanical components (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.
Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition.
Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor and the engine.

With the Keyless Entry and Start



► Place the remote control inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.

The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already warm. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:
– In mild conditions, do not leave the engine to warm up while stationary, but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.
– In wintry conditions, when the ignition is switched on, the duration of lighting of the preheating indicator lamp is extended. Wait until it goes off before starting the engine.
– In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure correct operation and preserve the lifespan of the vehicle's mechanical components, engine and gearbox, **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

For **Diesel vehicles**, when the temperature is below zero, starting will only occur once the pre-heating warning lamp goes off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, keep the brake or clutch pedal depressed until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and is running.

The "Keyless Entry and Start" system remote control must be within the recognition zone.
Never leave the vehicle with the engine running and with the remote control on your person.
If the remote control leaves the recognition zone, a message is displayed.
Move the remote control into the zone in order to be able to start the engine.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed on the instrument panel. In some circumstances, you must turn the steering wheel while pressing

the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering column. A message is displayed.

Switching off

With the conventional key/With the remote control key

► Immobilise the vehicle.
► Turn the key all the way to position **1 (Stop)** and remove it from the ignition.
► To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

► Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also turned off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking the remote control with you, even for a short time.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the ignition

i When opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

With Keyless Entry and Start

► Immobilise the vehicle.
► With the remote control in the recognition zone, press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine stops and the steering column locks.

i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
– never place one mat on top of another.
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Starting/Switching off the electric motor

Starting

The drive selector must be in mode **P**.
► If using a conventional or remote control key, depress the brake pedal and turn the key to position **3** until the motor starts, without depressing the accelerator. As soon as the motor starts, release the key so it returns to position **2**.
► If using Keyless Entry and Start, depress the brake pedal and briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button.
► Keep your foot on the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator lamp comes on and an audible signal is emitted, indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive.
► With your foot on the brake, select mode **D** or **R**.
► Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.
On starting, the instrument panel lights up and the power indicator needle performs one sweep then moves to the "neutral" position. The

steering column automatically unlocks (you may hear a sound and feel the steering wheel move).

Switching off

► If using a conventional or remote control key, turn the key fully to position **1 (Stop)**.
► If using Keyless Entry and Start, press the "**START/STOP**" button.
Before exiting the vehicle, check that:
– The drive selector is in mode **P**.
– The **READY** indicator lamp is off.

> The drive selector moves automatically to mode **P** when the motor is switched off or when the driver's door is opened.

> If the driver's door is opened while the required conditions for switching off are not met, an audible signal is emitted, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

Special case with Keyless Entry and Start

Switching on the ignition without starting the engine

With the "Keyless Entry and Start" electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

► Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column, to enable the engine to be started if the system fails to detect the key in the recognition zone, or if the battery in the electronic key is flat.

► Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
► **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
► **With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector**, select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.
The engine starts.

Remote control not recognised

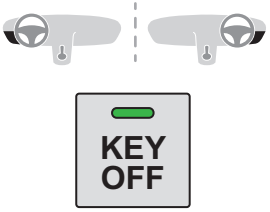
If the remote control is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears on the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.
► Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds to confirm switching off the engine, then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Forced switch-off (also called Back-up switch-off)

In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).
► To do this, press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 5 seconds.
In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

"Key off" mode

"**Key off**" mode allows you to lock the vehicle while leaving the engine running without the key or Keyless Entry and Start being inside the vehicle.
This mode allows electrical devices to continue operating to ensure thermal comfort, vehicle security and operation of the vehicle systems needed for the task.



► To activate or deactivate this mode, press this button (the button's indicator lamp is on when the mode is activated).

With an electric motor, this mode remains active for about 10 minutes after the vehicle is locked.

Manual parking brake

Application

► With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release on level ground

► With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, this warning lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

When parking on a slope or on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, turn the wheels against the kerb then apply the parking brake.

Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

With a manual gearbox, engage a gear and then switch off the ignition.

With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P**, then switch off the ignition.

Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.

At any time, with the engine running:

► To apply the parking brake, briefly pull the control.

► To release it, briefly push the control while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

This automatic operation can be deactivated in certain situations.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message "**Parking brake applied**".

The indicator lamp goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking brake released**".

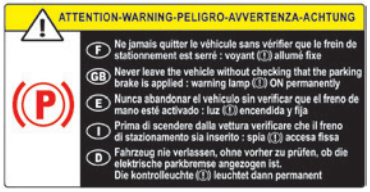
The indicator lamp flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.

As a safety measure, with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.

As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chock against one of the wheels.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

! **When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing**
With a manual gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and engage a gear.
With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.
When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:
► Press the brake pedal.
► While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

i If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:
► Briefly pull the control.
The control indicator lamp flashes to confirm the application request.

Automatic operation

Automatic release

First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.
The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.
With a manual gearbox
► Fully depress the clutch pedal and engage first gear or reverse.
► Depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.
With an automatic gearbox
► Depress the brake pedal.
► Select mode **D**, **M** or **R**.
► Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.
With a drive selector
► Depress the brake pedal.
► Select mode **D**, **B** or **R**.
► Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

i With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

! It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

i In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

Special cases

Immobilising the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

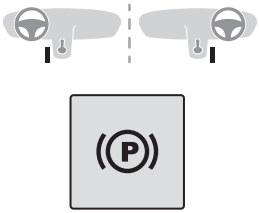
! In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended.
To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

i With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, if you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.



► Start the engine.
► Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
► Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
► Keep the control pushed in the release direction for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
► Release the control.
► Depress and hold the brake pedal.
► Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.

This indicator lamp on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.
► Release the control and the brake pedal.
From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.
► Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp on the instrument panel going out).

Emergency braking

If depressing the brake pedal fails to provide effective braking or in exceptional circumstances (e.g. driver unwell, assisted driving), the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released.
The ABS and DSC systems stabilise the vehicle during emergency braking.
If emergency braking malfunctions, the message "**Parking brake fault**" will be displayed on the instrument panel.

If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lamps on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.
► In this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Hill start assist

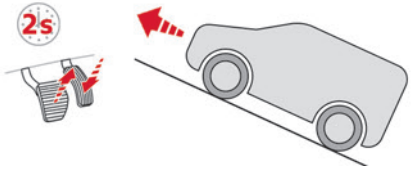
This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
The system is only active when:
– The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
– Certain slope conditions are met.
– The driver's door is closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the electric parking brake control are on fixed.

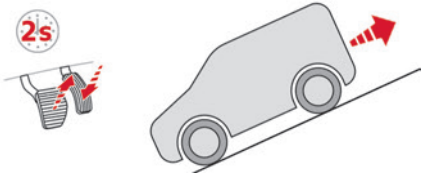
! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox and you have to move off on a steep slope (uphill or downhill) with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake then release the brake pedal.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:
– If first gear or neutral is engaged on a manual gearbox.
– If mode **D** or **M** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
– If mode **D** or **B** is selected on the drive selector.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Malfunction

If the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

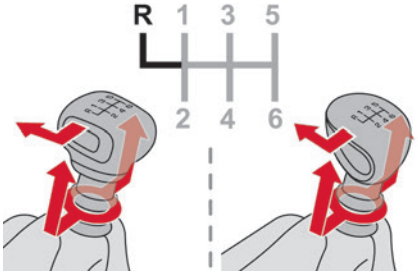
6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

► Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



► Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left, then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate engine starting:
– always select neutral,

– depress the clutch pedal.

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine)
This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears.
Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.
The system cannot be deactivated.

On certain BlueHDi Diesel versions with a manual gearbox, the system may suggest shifting into neutral (**N** is displayed on the instrument panel) so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode of Stop & Start), in certain driving conditions.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an "up" or "down" arrow and the recommended gear.

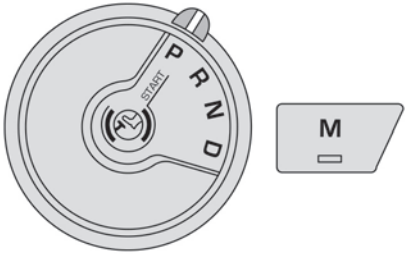
The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).
The system never suggests:
– engaging first gear.
– engaging reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Automatic 6 or 8-speed gearbox, with electronic management of gear changes. It also offers a manual mode with sequential gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel.

Gear selector

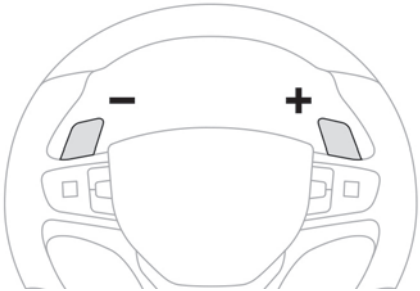
To turn the gear selector in complete safety, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake pedal.



P. Park.
R. Reverse.
N. Neutral.
D. Drive (automatic operation).
M. Manual (manual operation with sequential changing of the gears).

Position **N** can be used in traffic jams or in a car wash tunnel.

Steering mounted controls



► Pull the right-hand "**+**" or left-hand "**-**" control paddle towards you to change up or down.

> ℹ The steering mounted controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When you move the selector or press button **M**, the corresponding gear and indicator lamp are shown on the instrument panel.
The "**-**" symbol is displayed if a value is invalid.

► If the message "**Foot on the brake**" is displayed on the instrument panel, press the brake pedal firmly.

Starting the vehicle

► With your foot on the brake, select position **P**.
► Start the engine.
If the conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel screen.
► Release the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode (with electric parking brake).
► Select position **R**, **N** or **D**.

> ! If you are setting off from a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **depress the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode (with electric parking brake), then release the brake pedal.

► Gradually release the brake pedal.
Or
► Accelerate gradually in order to release the electric parking brake (if it is set to automatic mode).
The vehicle moves off immediately.

> ℹ If **P** is displayed on the instrument panel but the selector is in another position, place the selector in position **P** to allow the engine to be started.
> If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

> ! When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
> Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.
> As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking your key or remote control with you, even for a short time.
> When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

> ! With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic operation

► Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the gears.
The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.

► For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, fully depress the accelerator pedal (kick-down).
The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Temporary manual control of gear changes

You can temporarily assume control of gear changing using the "**+**" et "**-**" steering-mounted controls. The gear change request will be executed if the engine speed permits.
This function allows you to anticipate certain situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road.
After a few seconds with no inputs via the control paddles, the gearbox reverts to automatic operation.

Creeping (moving without using the accelerator)

This function facilitates manoeuvring of the vehicle at low speed (when parking, in traffic jams, etc.).
With the engine at idle, parking brake released and position **D**, **M** or **R** selected, the **vehicle moves** as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal (even without pressing the accelerator).

! As a safety precaution, never leave the vehicle with the engine running and the doors closed.

Manual operation

► With the selector in position **D**, press button **M** to enable 6- or 8-speed **sequential** gear changing.
The indicator lamp for the button comes on.
► Operate the "**+**" or "**-**" steering mounted controls.

M appears and the engaged gears are shown in succession on the instrument panel.
► You can revert to automatic operation at any time by pressing button **M** again.
The indicator lamp for the button goes off.

i In manual mode, there is no need to release the accelerator pedal while changing gear.

i It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit.

i If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is shown.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox automatically selects gear **M1**.

i To preserve the brakes while descending a steep incline, use engine braking to reduce your speed (change down or select a lower gear).
Keeping the brake pedal pressed continuously for long periods can overheat the brakes, with the risk of damaging the braking system or making it inoperative.
Only use the brakes when necessary, to slow or stop the vehicle.

i Depending on the road configuration (e.g. mountainous road), manual operation may be preferable.
Automatic operation may not always be suitable, and does not enable engine braking.

Invalid value during manual operation

This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

► Place the selector "correctly" at a position.

Switching off the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, select position **P** then apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless this is set to automatic mode (with electric parking brake).

Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake has been applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

The corresponding indicator lamps in the selector and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as those on the instrument panel.

A point of resistance may be noticed when moving to position **P**.

If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.

► Return the drive selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

When positioned on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **depress the brake pedal**, select position **P**, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode (with electric parking brake), then release the brake pedal.

In all circumstances, ensure that the selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

Malfunction

When the ignition is on, a message appears on the instrument panel to indicate a fault with the gearbox.

In this case, the gearbox goes into back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a significant jolt (without risk to the gearbox) when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**.

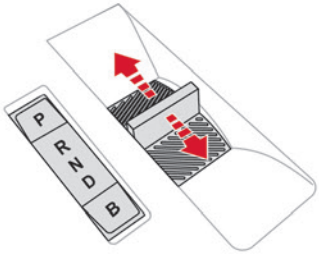
Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

There is a risk of damaging the gearbox:
– If the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed simultaneously.
– In the event of a battery failure, forcing the selector from position **P** to another position.

If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Drive selector (Electric)



The drive selector is a pulse selector with a regenerative braking function.

The drive selector provides traction control based on the driving style, the road profile and the vehicle load.

With regenerative braking activated, it also manages engine braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

P. Park
Button for parking the vehicle: the front wheels are locked (the button lights up to indicate that it is activated).

R. Reverse
To engage reverse gear, with your foot on the brake pedal.

N. Neutral
To move the vehicle with the ignition off and so allow it to free-wheel.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.
D. Drive (automatic forward gear)
B. Brake (regenerative braking)
Regenerative braking (the button lights up to indicate its activation).

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the drive selector status is displayed on the instrument panel:
P : Park.
R : Reverse.
N : Neutral.
D : Drive (automatic forward gear).
B : Brake (regenerative braking activated).

Operation

► Move the selector by pressing it forwards (**N** or **R**) or rearwards (**N** or **D**) once or twice, passing the point of resistance if necessary.
For example, to change from **P** to **R** (with your foot on the brake pedal), either push forwards twice without passing the point of resistance or push just once, passing the point of resistance.

Regenerative braking

With the Brake function and when decelerating

The Brake function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. The vehicle slows more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal.
The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's driving range.

! The resulting deceleration of the vehicle does not cause the brake lamps to come on.

► From mode **D**, press button **B** to activate/deactivate the function (the button lights up when the function is activated).
D on the instrument panel is replaced with **B**.
The status of the function is saved when the ignition is switched off.

! In some situations (e.g. battery full, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration.
The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

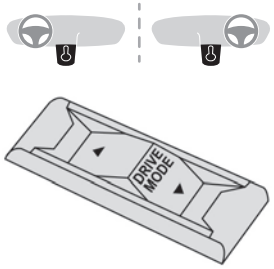
With the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery.
This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

i The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

Driving modes (Electric)

Driving modes are selected using the following control:



► Press the control to display the modes on the instrument panel, and depending on version, on the screen with MyCitroën Drive.

When starting the vehicle, no mode can be selected until the **READY** indicator lamp is displayed.
When the message disappears, the selected mode is activated and remains indicated on the instrument panel (except **Normal** mode).
Each time the ignition is switched on, **Normal** mode is selected by default.

Normal

This optimises the driving range and dynamic performance.
To obtain maximum torque and power, depress the accelerator pedal fully.

Eco

Optimises energy consumption, by reducing the output of the heating and air conditioning (without actually deactivating them) and limiting both motor torque and power.

Power

Provides equivalent vehicle performance when fully laden (GVW) to when the vehicle is in Normal mode and when unladen.

Stop & Start

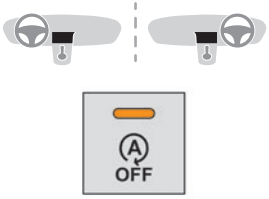
The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.

Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Driving on flooded roads
Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation/Reactivation

With audio system



► To deactivate or reactivate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp is **on** when the system is **deactivated**.

With touch screen

The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

The system is reactivated automatically whenever the engine is started by the driver.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The sliding side door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
– The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
– The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
– The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:
With a **manual gearbox**: at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h) or with the vehicle stationary

(depending on engine), with the gear lever in neutral and the clutch pedal released.
With an **automatic gearbox**: with the brake pedal depressed or the gear selector in position **N**, with the vehicle stationary.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:
– Steep slope (ascending or descending).
– Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the **START/STOP** button).
– Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
– Demisting active.

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:
With a manual gearbox: with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
With an automatic gearbox:
– With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
– With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
– With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
– Reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:
– With a **manual gearbox**: vehicle speed exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h) or 2 mph (3 km/h) (depending on engine).
– With an **automatic gearbox**, vehicle speed exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h).

In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

Depending on the vehicle's equipment:

In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel.

The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.
Depending on version, a warning message may also be displayed, prompting you to place the gear selector in position **N** and depress the brake pedal.
► Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button.

12 V battery
The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**.

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! Under-inflation detection does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):
– worsens road-holding,
– lengthens braking distances,
– causes premature wear of the tyres,
– increases fuel consumption.

i The inflation pressures specified for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

! **Checking tyre pressures**
This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

i **Snow chains**
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

i **Spare wheel**
The steel spare wheel does not have an under-inflation detection sensor.

Under-inflation alert

This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.
► Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
► Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

► Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tyres when cold.
► If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
► In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

! Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.
The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tyre blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.
The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a sporty driving mode.

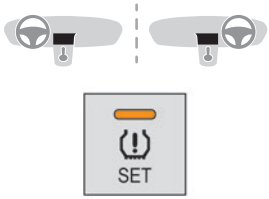
i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

► The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.
Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.
The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

With dashboard button



► With the vehicle stationary, press this button for about 3 seconds then release it.
Reinitialisation is confirmed by an audible signal.

Without dashboard button

With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the vehicle configuration menu.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel.
In this case, the tyre under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

Driving aids
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

Manoeuvring aids
The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Radar(s)
The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).

Driving aids camera
This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.

In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras
The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Sensors
The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Maintenance
Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

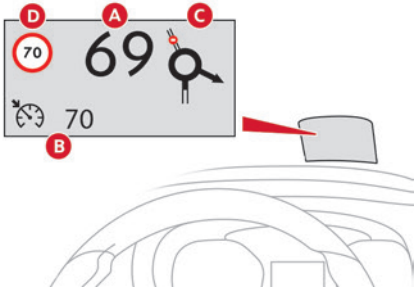
Mats/Pedal trims
The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
– Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
– Never fit one mat on top of another.

Units of speed
Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Head-up display

System which projects various information onto a smoked blade placed in the driver's field of vision to avoid the driver having to take their eyes off the road.

Display in operation

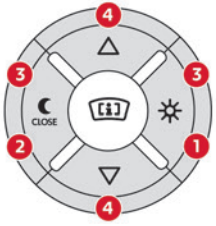


Once the system has been activated, the following information is grouped together in the head-up display:
A. The speed of the vehicle.
B. Cruise control/speed limiter information.

C. If the vehicle is so equipped, inter-vehicle distance information, automatic emergency braking alerts and navigation instructions.
D. If the vehicle is so equipped, speed limit information.

For more information about **Navigation**, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

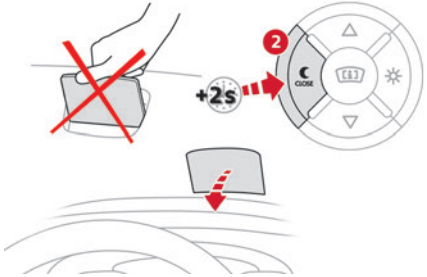
Selectors



1. On.
2. Off (long press).
3. Brightness adjustment.
4. Display height adjustment.

Activation/Deactivation

► With the engine running, press button **1** to activate the system and deploy the projection blade.



► Press and hold button **2** to deactivate the system and retract the projection blade.
The state of the system is saved when the engine is switched off and restored on restarting.

Adjusting the height

► With the engine running, adjust the display to the desired height using the buttons **4**:
- up to move the display up,
- down to move the display down.

Brightness adjustment

► With the engine running, adjust the brightness of the information display using the buttons **3**:
- on the "sun" to increase the brightness,
- on the "moon" to decrease the brightness.

When stationary or while driving, no objects should be placed around the projection blade (or in its recess) so as not to impede its movement and correct operation.

In certain extreme weather conditions (rain and/or snow, bright sunshine, etc.), the head-up display may not be legible or may suffer temporary interference.
Some sunglasses may hamper reading of the information.
To clean the projection blade, use a clean, soft cloth (such as a spectacles cloth or microfibre cloth). Do not use a dry or abrasive cloth, or detergent or solvent products, due to the risk of scratching the projection blade or damaging the non-reflective coating.

This system operates when the engine is running, and the settings are saved when the ignition is switched off.

Memorising speeds

This function allows you to save speed settings which are then used to set the two systems: the speed limiter (limits the speed of the vehicle) or cruise control (vehicle cruising speed).
You can save 6 speed settings for each of the two systems.

Programming

The speed thresholds can be set in the vehicle configuration menu using the touch screen.

► Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings:

– speed limiter

or

– cruise control.

► Press the button corresponding to the speed setting you want to change.

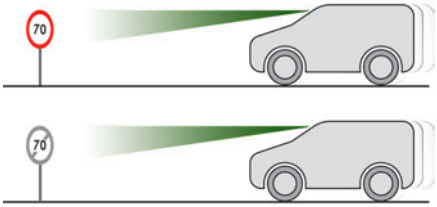
► Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.

► Confirm to record the changes and quit the menu.

MEM Memorised speeds are recalled by pressing this button.

Road signs recognition

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:

– Speed limit signs detected by the camera.

– Speed limit information from the navigation system's mapping.

! Navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

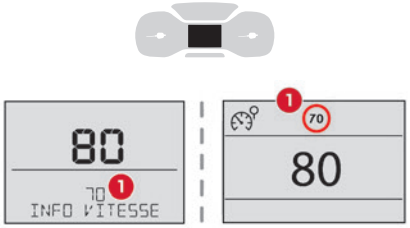
! The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.

! Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

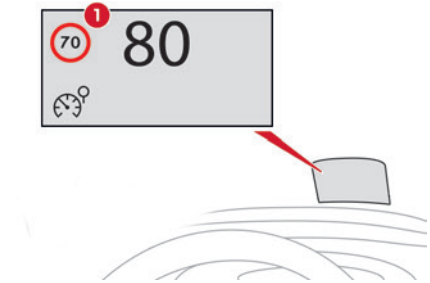
Activation/Deactivation

The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

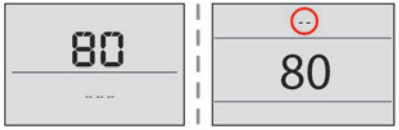


Head-up display

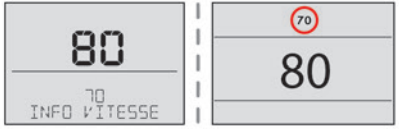


1. Speed limit indication

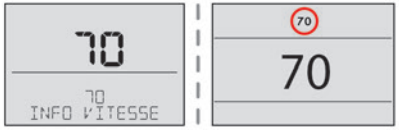
Speed display



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



The driver can, if desired, adjust the speed of the vehicle according to the information given by the system.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:
– Poor weather (rain, snow).
– Atmospheric pollution.
– Towing.
– Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
– Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
– Young drivers.

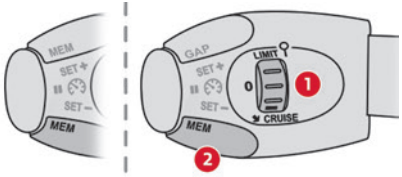
The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:
– Road signs that are obstructed, non-standard, damaged or bent.
– Obsolete or incorrect maps.

Storing the speed setting

In addition to **Road signs recognition**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control 'store' button.

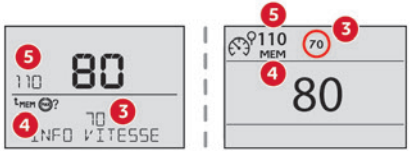
> For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering-mounted controls

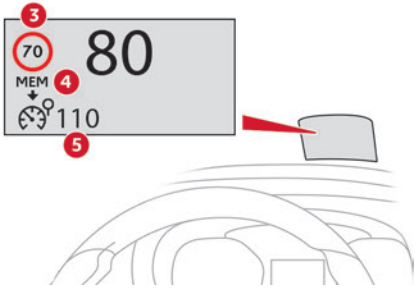


1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Head-up display



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Request to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Storing the speed setting

► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.
Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and "**MEM**" flashes for a few seconds, prompting you to save it as a new speed setting.

> ℹ If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Road signs recognition, the "**MEM**" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.
► Press button **2 once** to save the suggested speed value.
A message is displayed, confirming the request.
► Press button **2 again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
The display then reverts to its previous state.

Speed limiter

> ! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

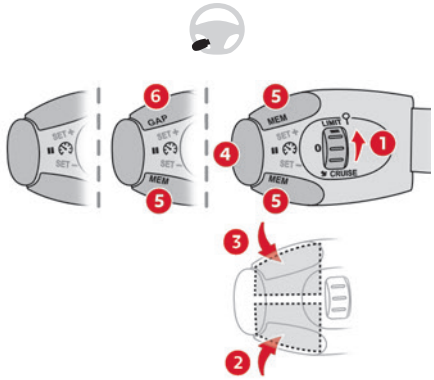
This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).
The speed limiter is switched on manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

> ℹ **GAP** For more information on this button and the **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

> ℹ **MEM** For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

> ℹ For more information on **Speed limit recognition** and memorising the speed limit in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

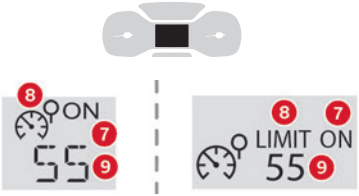
Steering-mounted control



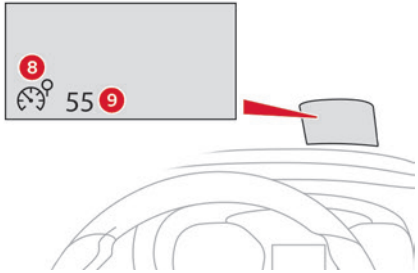
1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Head-up display



7. Speed limiter on/pause indication.
8. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
9. Speed setting value.

Switching on/Pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.

► If the speed limit setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4-II** to switch the speed limiter on.
► Pressing **4-II** again temporarily pauses the function (pause).

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:
► For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), briefly press **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** repeatedly.
► For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold **2-SET-** or **3-SET+**.
To change the limit speed setting using memorised speeds, via the touch screen:
► Press **5-MEM** to display the memorised speed settings.
► Press the touch screen button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new limit speed.
To modify the speed limit setting based on the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:
► Press **5-MEM** once; a message is displayed, confirming the memorisation request.
► Press **5-MEM** again to save the suggested speed.

The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

► To temporarily exceed the programmed speed threshold, fully depress the accelerator pedal.
The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.
If it is exceeded for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is triggered.
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.
When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.
Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - Specific recommendations

! The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.
Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.
When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.
On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

i **Exceeding the programmed speed setting**
You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).
To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

! **Operating limits**
Never use the system in the following situations:
– In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
– In heavy traffic.
– On winding or steep roads.
– On slippery or flooded roads.
– In poor weather conditions.
– In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
– Driving on a speed circuit.
– Driving on a rolling road.
– When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Cruise control

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the

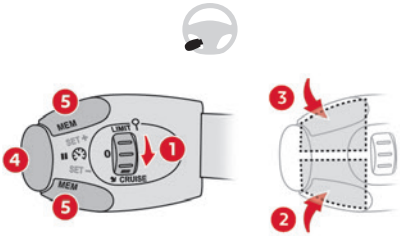
Cruise control - Specific recommendations.

This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.
With a drive selector, mode **D** or **B** must be engaged.

Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

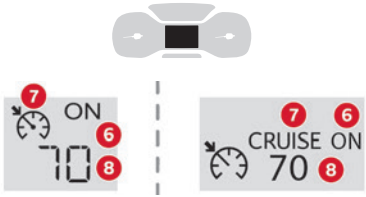
Steering-mounted control



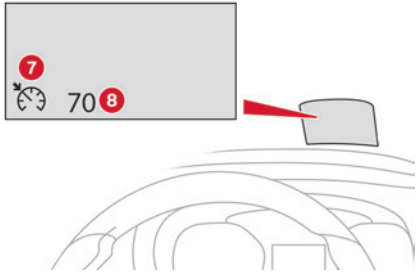
1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Activate cruise control at the current speed/ decrease speed setting
3. Activate cruise control at the current speed/ increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (**MEM** display)

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Head-up display



6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selection indication.
8. Speed setting value.

Switching on/pausing

► Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.

► Press button **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.
► Release the accelerator pedal.
► Pressing button **4-II** temporarily pauses the function (pause).
► Pressing button **4-II** again resumes operation of the cruise control (ON).

i Cruise control can also be paused temporarily:
– by pressing the brake pedal.
– by pressing the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox (depending on the engine fitted).
– automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

Changing the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.
To change the cruise speed setting, based on the vehicle's current speed:
► For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), briefly press **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** repeatedly.
► For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold **2-SET-** or **3-SET+**.

! Pressing and holding **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To change the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:
► Press **5-MEM** to display the memorised speed settings.
► Press the touch screen button for the desired speed setting.
The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new cruise speed.
To change the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:
► Press **5-MEM** once; a message is displayed, confirming the memorisation request.
► Press **5-MEM** again to save the suggested speed.
The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (when overtaking, for example), it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is temporarily deactivated and the programmed speed displayed flashes.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, cruise control takes over again and the programmed speed setting stops flashing.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.
To activate the system again, with the vehicle speed above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Adaptive cruise control

! Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

This system **automatically** maintains the speed of your vehicle at a value which you set (speed setting), while keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle), and which has been set beforehand by the driver. The system controls the vehicle's acceleration and deceleration automatically using only engine braking (as if the driver had pressed the "-" minus button).

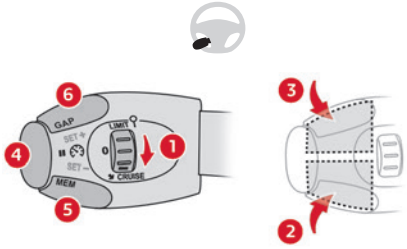
To do this, it uses a radar located in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

i If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows the vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, without ever exceeding the speed setting.

! Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be misinterpreted by the radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of distance and lead to the vehicle accelerating or braking inappropriately.

Steering-mounted controls



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved
5. Depending on version:
   Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front

Use

Activating the system (paused)

The adaptive cruise control must be selected in the "**Driving/Vehicle**" menu.

► Turn the knob **1** downwards into the **CRUISE** position with the engine running. The cruise control is ready for operation.

Starting cruise control and selecting a speed

The vehicle speed must be between 25 and 93 mph (40 and 150 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, third or fourth gear or higher must be engaged.
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.
With a drive selector, mode **D** or **B** must be engaged.

! If the speed setting is above 93 mph (150 km/h), the adaptive cruise control switches to standard cruise control mode

(without automatic regulation of the inter-vehicle safety distance).

► Press buttons **2-SET-** or **3-SET+**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 25 mph (40 km/h)) and the cruise control is immediately activated.
► Press **3** to increase or **2** to decrease the speed setting (in steps of 5 mph (5 km/h) if the button is kept depressed).

! Pressing and holding either button **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

Pausing/resuming cruise control

► Press **4-II** or depress the **brake pedal**. To pause cruise control, it is also possible to:
- Shift from mode **D** to **N**,
- Depress the clutch pedal for more than 10 seconds.
- Press the electric parking brake control.

► Press **4-II** to restart cruise control. Cruise control may have been paused automatically:
- When the inter-vehicle distance threshold is reached.
- When the distance between your vehicle and the one in front becomes too short.
- When the vehicle starts moving too slowly or the vehicle in front starts moving too slowly.
- When the ESC system is triggered.

! When the driver attempts to reactivate cruise control, after the function has been paused, the message "Activation not possible, unsuitable conditions" is briefly displayed if reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

Using the Road signs recognition function or speed limit sign memorisation to modify the speed setting.

► Press **5-MEM** to accept the speed setting proposed by the system on the instrument panel or touch screen, then press again to confirm.

! To prevent any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle.

Changing the inter-vehicle distance

► Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds ("Distant", "Normal" or "Close"), then press again to select a threshold.
After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

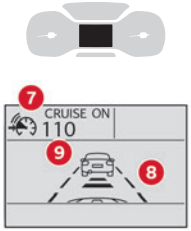
Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

► Depress the accelerator pedal. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated as long as you continue to accelerate. The speed on the instrument panel flashes.

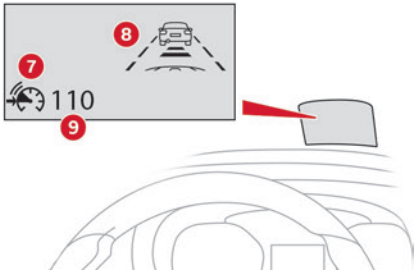
Deactivating the system

► Turn the knob **1** upwards into position **0** (**OFF**).

Information displayed on the instrument panel



Head-up display



7. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
8. Indication of selection of cruise control mode, or vehicle speed adjustment phase.
9. Speed setting value.

For more information on the **Head-up display**, refer to the corresponding section.

Messages and alerts

The display of these messages or alerts is not sequential.

“Cruise control paused” or “Cruise control suspended” following a brief acceleration by the driver.

“Cruise control active”, no vehicle detected.

“Cruise control active”, vehicle detected.

“Cruise control active and speed adjusted”, vehicle detected too close or at a slower speed.

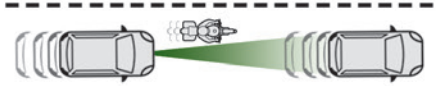
“Cruise control active and speed adjusted”, automatic deactivation imminent following a cruise control limit being reached.

“Cruise control paused”, automatic deactivation following speed limit adjustment being exceeded and no reaction from the driver.

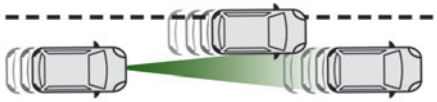
Operating limits

The regulation range is limited to a maximum difference of 19 mph (30 km/h) between the cruise speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front.

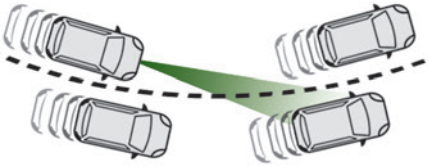
Above this, the system pauses itself if the safety distance becomes too short.
The adaptive cruise control uses only engine braking to slow the vehicle. Consequently the vehicle loses speed slowly, as when releasing the accelerator pedal.
The system is paused automatically:
– if the vehicle in front slows down too much or too suddenly, and the driver does not brake,
– if a vehicle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front,
– if the system does not slow the vehicle enough to continue to maintain a safe distance, for example when descending a steep hill.
Cases of non-detection by the radar:
– Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).
– Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.
When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



– When following a narrow vehicle.



– Vehicles not running in the middle of the lane.



– Vehicles entering a corner.
– Vehicles changing lane at the last moment.
Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.
Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:
– When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.
– Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.

The adaptive cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

The system does not act on the braking system, but works only with engine braking.
The regulation range is limited: there will no longer be any adjustment of speed if the difference between the programmed speed

setting and the speed of the vehicle in front becomes too great.

! If the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front is too great, the speed cannot be adjusted: the cruise control is automatically deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction with the adaptive cruise control, you will be alerted by an audible signal and the display of the message "Driving aid functions fault".
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system:
– warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the preceding vehicle.
– reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

i The speed will be reduced by a maximum of 16 mph (25 km/h) (versions with camera only) or by a maximum of 31 mph (50 km/h) (versions with camera and radar).

i The system also takes motorcyclists into account.
It may also react on animals. Animals (especially animals smaller than 0.5 m) and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system includes three functions:
– Collision Risk Alert.
– Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
– Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

! This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward without trailer.

Brake system operational.
Seat belts fastened for all passengers.
Stabilised speed on roads with no or low curvature.

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel without any additional message, to indicate that the automatic braking system is not available.
This is a normal behavior indicating that a condition is not fulfilled and which does not request the support of a workshop.
In any situations with ignition on where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended, for instance:
– Towing a trailer (particularly a trailer without its own braking system).
– Carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack.
– Driving with snow chains.
– Using an automatic car wash.
– Performing any maintenance (e.g. changing a wheel, working inside the engine compartment).
– Placing the vehicle on a rolling bench in a workshop.
– Towing the vehicle.
– Following a front bumper deformation.
– Following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

The system diagnoses permanently its capability and may inhibit itself without specific driver indication, if the system is outside of the regular operating conditions (e.g. sensor initialization, board voltage out of regular range, activation of stability system). Therefore, the system may not be available just after starting the vehicle.

It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW limit and load height limits for roof bars).

Following an impact (e.g. a collision), the system is automatically deactivated.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, or with a pedestrian or cyclist.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.

The threshold is set via the vehicle configuration menu with the audio system or touch screen.
► Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds: "Far", "Normal" or "Close".

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.
The system takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the difference speed of the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, and the operation of the vehicle (e.g. actions on the pedals, steering wheel) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.

(orange)
Level 1: visual alert only, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

(red)
Level 2: visual and audible alert, warning that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

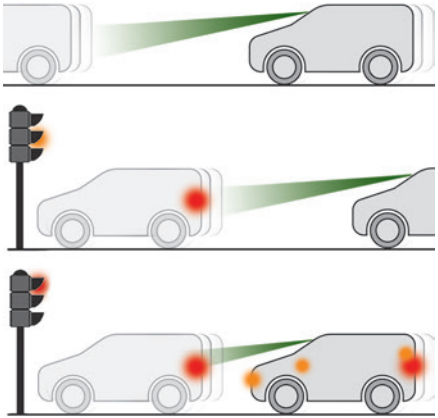
While approaching a vehicle too quickly, the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert depends on the trigger threshold selected. It reacts only on moving vehicles. It is disabled automatically at lower speed.

! It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA)

This function supplements braking in the event that the driver brakes, but not enough to avoid a collision.
This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called "automatic emergency braking", intervenes after the acoustic alert if the driver does not operate the brake pedal quickly enough.
The system aims at reducing the speed of impact or avoiding a collision if the driver fails to react.

i The speed will be reduced by a maximum of 16 mph (25 km/h) (versions with camera only) or by a maximum of 31 mph (50 km/h) (versions with camera and radar).

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:
– At reduced speed in an urban environment, when a stationary vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected.
– The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera only) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.
During the flashing time, the function is not available.
With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking, keep the brake pedal depressed, also after a complete stop is reached, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.
With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

i The driver can override the automatic emergency braking at any time by firmly turning the steering wheel and/or firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

The brake pedal may feel hard and vibrate slightly while the function is operating.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Malfunction

This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message "**Sensor blind**" in certain cases.
Version with camera only: the system is deactivated.
Version with camera and radar: the system may continue to operate in a degraded mode. This may be caused by a reduced visibility (e.g. rain, fog, snow, blinding by low sun) or by a real sensor blockage. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.

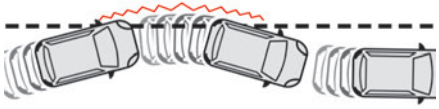
In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

These warning lamps light up on the instrument panel and/or in the warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version). The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Lane departure warning system

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



System that uses a camera to recognise continuous or broken lines on traffic lanes and triggers an alert if the vehicle wanders off line.

If the direction indicator is not used at speeds above 50 mph (80 km/h) and there is a risk of one of these lines on the road surface being crossed, the system triggers the alert.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

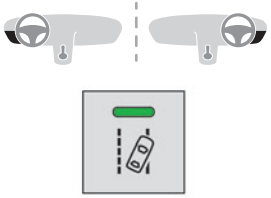
Detection - Alert

You are alerted by the flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

Activation/Deactivation

With audio system



► To activate or deactivate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp is **on** when the system is **activated**.

With touch screen

The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

Malfunction

Depending on the vehicle's equipment:

The indicator lamp in this button flashes.

or

/ The button flashes and a fault appears.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

> Detection may be impeded:
> – If the markings on the ground are worn and not clearly contrasted against the road surface.
> – If the windscreen is dirty.
> – In certain extreme weather conditions: fog, heavy rain, snow, shade, bright sunlight or direct exposure to the sun (e.g. low sun, leaving a tunnel).

Distraction detection

> For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Depending on version, the function consists of either the "Coffee Break Alert" system alone or combined with the "Driver Attention Warning" system.

> These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
> It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.
> Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

Activation/Deactivation

This function is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

The function is activated by default when the ignition is switched on.

Coffee Break Alert

The system triggers an alert when it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

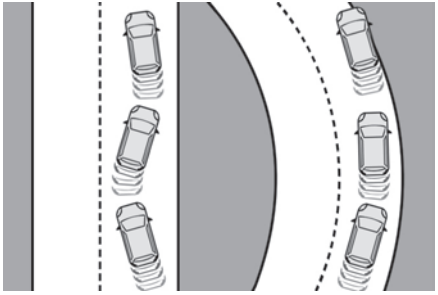
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

– With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
– The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
– The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

> As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 43 mph (70 km/h), the system goes into standby.
> Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 43 mph (70 km/h).

Driver Attention Warning

Depending on version, the Coffee Break Alert system may be combined with the Driver Attention Warning system.



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.

To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen.

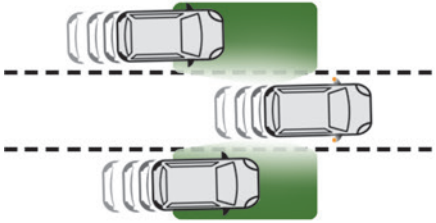
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 43 mph (70 km/h)).
At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message "**Be vigilant!**", accompanied by an audible signal.
After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

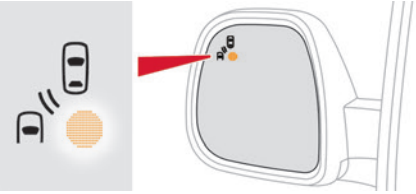
The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
– lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks);
– close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected);
– roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Blind spot monitoring

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system warns the driver of a potential danger posed by the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, motorcycle) in the vehicle's blind spots (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision) using sensors located on the sides of the bumpers.

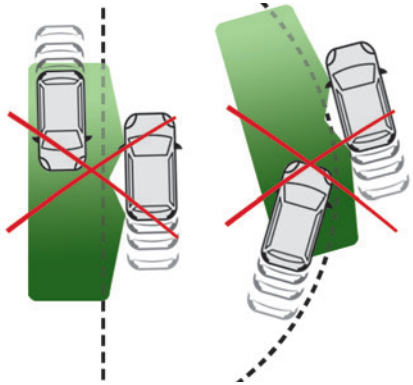


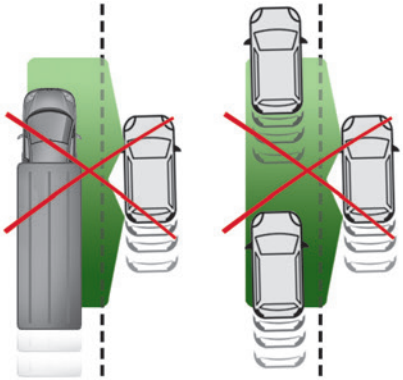
A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
– **fixed**, immediately, when being overtaken;
– **flashing**, after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly, and when the direction indicator is used.

Operation

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The alert is given by an orange warning lamp coming on in the relevant door mirror, as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, bicycle - is detected.
The following conditions must be met for this:
– all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
– the speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
– you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
– a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
– the traffic is flowing normally,
– overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time where the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
– you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
– your vehicle is not towing a trailer, a caravan, etc.





No alert will be given in the following situations:
– in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, safety barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
– with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
– driving on a winding road or sharp bends,
– when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is both in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
– when overtaking quickly,
– in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

Activation/Deactivation

With audio system

► To activate or deactivate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp is **on** when the system is **activated**.

With touch screen

The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

Malfunction

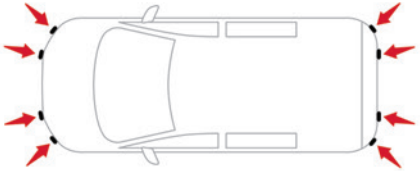
Depending on the vehicle's equipment:

In the event of a fault, this or these warning lamp(s) flash(es).
or

The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking sensors

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

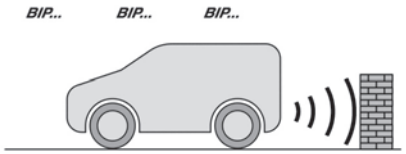


This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

Rear parking sensors

► Engage reverse gear to start the system (confirmed by an audible signal).
The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

Audible assistance



The function signals the presence of obstacles present within the sensors' detection zone.
The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) allows you to identify the side on which the obstacle is located.

Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that move progressively nearer to the vehicle (green: more distant obstacles; yellow: close obstacles; red: very close obstacles).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

ℹ The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle relative to the vehicle, in front or behind it.

Deactivation/Activation

With dashboard button

► To deactivate or activate the system, press this button.
The indicator lamp is **on** when the system is **deactivated**.

Without dashboard button

The settings are changed via the vehicle configuration menu.

ℹ The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Operating limits

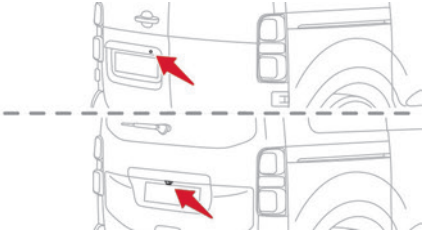
If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

Malfunction

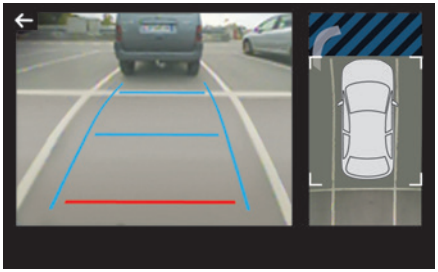
In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse gear, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Top Rear Vision

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

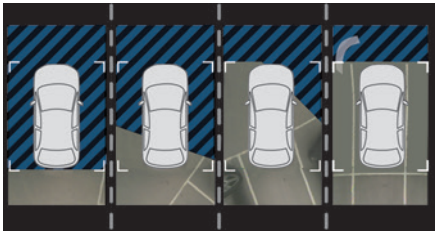


As soon as reverse gear is engaged with the engine running, this system displays views of your vehicle's close surroundings on the touch screen using a camera located at the rear of the vehicle.



The screen is divided into two parts with a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.
Various contextual views may be displayed:
– Standard view.
– 180° view.
– Zoom view.
AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom).
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.
The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation

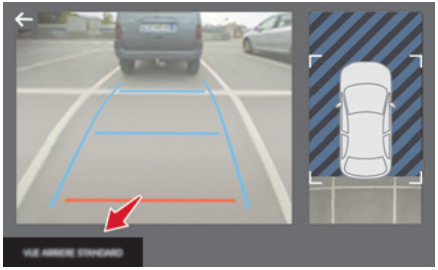


Using the rear camera, the vehicle's close surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.
An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.
It facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

i The display disappears above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
The system is automatically deactivated about 7 seconds after coming out of reverse or on opening a door or the boot.

Activation

Activation is automatic on engaging reverse gear at a speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h).

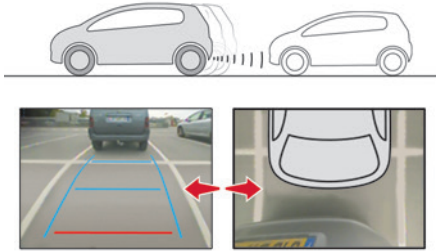


You can choose the display mode at any time by pressing this area.
When the sub-menu is displayed, select one of the four views:

	"Standard view".
	"180° view".
	"Zoom view".
AUTO	"AUTO mode".

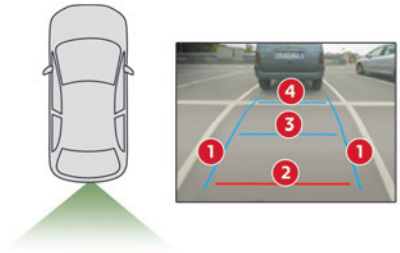
The function will be deactivated:
– If a trailer is attached or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towing device (vehicle fitted with a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).
– Above about 6 mph (10 km/h).
– When the boot is opened.
– Upon changing out of reverse gear (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
– By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from the rear view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

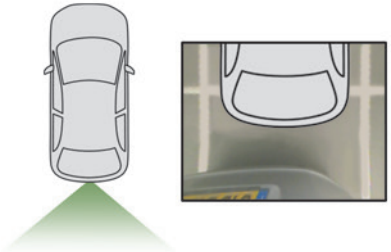
Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

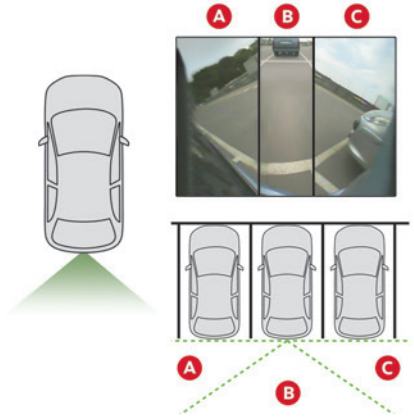
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.
It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

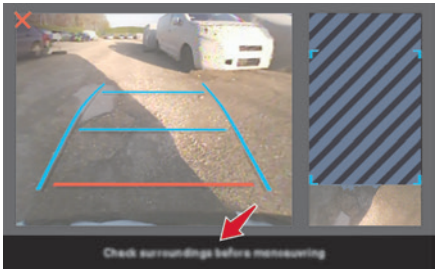
180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking space, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.
This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.
It features 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is only available via the view selection menu.

Quick start mode



This mode displays, as quickly as possible, the contextual view (left-hand part) and the overhead view of the vehicle.
A message is displayed advising you to check your vehicle's surroundings before starting the manoeuvre.

CITROËN prefers TotalEnergies

FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH QUARTZ LUBRICANTS

Partners for more than 50 years, Citroën & TotalEnergies share common values: technology, creativity, innovation. TotalEnergies equips Citroën vehicles with **Quartz lubricants** from their first filling in the factory to approved maintenance networks to guarantee them optimal performance on a daily basis. Especially designed for Citroën vehicles, Quartz lubricants make them even more powerful, more fuel efficient and more environmentally friendly. For your car maintenance, fill up with confidence with Quartz lubricants !

Keep your engine younger for longer !

Quartz Ineo Xtra First 0W-20 is a very high performance lubricant resulting from the joint work of the Citroën and TotalEnergies R&D teams. Its innovative technology extends your engine's life while reaching significant fuel savings and thus limiting CO_2 emissions. The product is now available in new packaging* made of 50% recycled material and 100% recyclable.

* 1L & 5L produced in Europe

Compatibility of fuels

B7 B10 B20 B30

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

i The only Diesel fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.

At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 69 litres.
Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.

Low fuel level

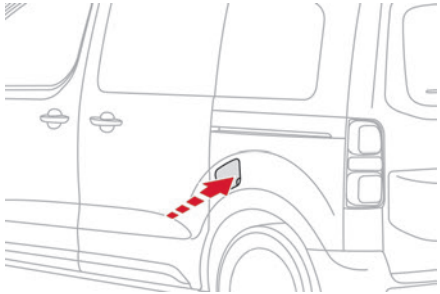
When the low fuel level is reached, one of these warning lamps lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
When it first comes on, **about 8 litres** of fuel remain.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.
For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

i A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

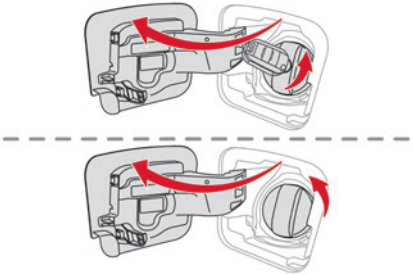
! **Stop & Start**
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Refuelling

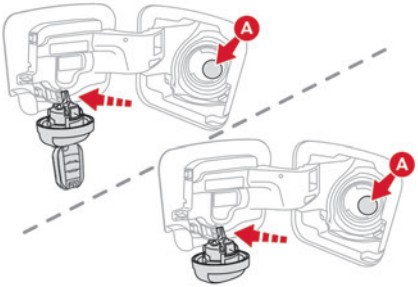
At least 8 litres of fuel must be added, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:
► **Always switch off the engine.**
► Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Entry and Start.



► Open the fuel filler flap.

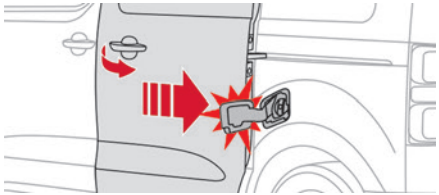


► With a conventional key, insert the key into the filler cap, then turn the key to the left.



► Unscrew and remove the filler cap, then place it on the holder located on the fuel filler flap.
► Insert the nozzle and push it in fully (while pushing on the metal valve **A**).
► Fill the tank. Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.

► Put the filler cap back in place and close it by turning to the right.
► Push the fuel filler flap to close it (your vehicle must be unlocked).



! If the vehicle is equipped with a sliding door on its left-hand side, do not open it while the fuel filler flap is open (risk of damaging the fuel filler flap and the sliding door and risk of injuring the person filling up).

! If the fuel filler flap is open and you try to open the left-hand side door, a mechanism prevents it from being opened.
The door can be opened half-way, however.
With a mechanical door, close the fuel filler flap to regain use of the door.
With an electric door, to be able to use it correctly, close the fuel filler flap and then press an opening control.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

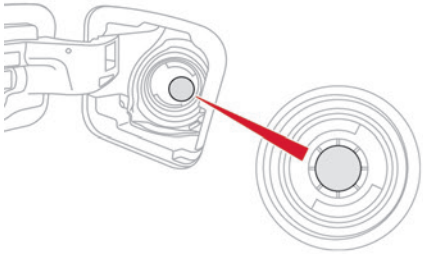
! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Diesel misfuel prevention

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank slowly.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device.

i **Travelling abroad**
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a CITROËN dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

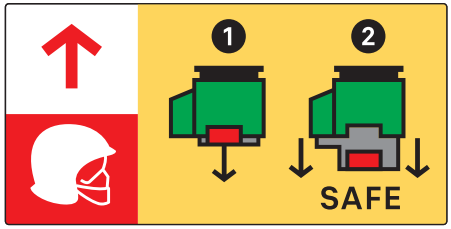
Charging system (Electric)

400 V electrical system

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:

! An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

! High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, CITROËN recommends that you:
– Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.
– Never work on the orange high voltage cables or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label.
Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
– Never damage, modify or remove the orange high voltage cables or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
– Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
– Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.
In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.
Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. CITROËN recommends that you:
– Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
– Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
– Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
– Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.



This label is intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.
No other person must touch the device shown on this label.

In the event of an accident or impact to the vehicle's underbody
In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of exposure to a fire
Immediately exit and evacuate all passengers from the vehicle. Never attempt to fight the fire yourself - risk of electrocution!
You must immediately contact the emergency services, informing them that the incident involves an electric vehicle.

When washing
Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.
Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

High-pressure washing
To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.
Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect / disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

Traction battery

This battery stores the energy that powers the electric motor and the thermal comfort equipment in the passenger compartment. It is discharged during use, and must therefore be regularly recharged. There is no need to wait for the traction battery to fall to its reserve level before recharging.
The range of the battery may vary according to the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal comfort equipment and the ageing of its components.

The lifespan of the traction battery depends on multiple factors, such as climatic conditions, distance travelled and how often it has been fast-charged.

To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, CITROËN recommends that you:
– Do not fully charge the battery of your electric vehicle daily (charge the traction battery below 80% as often as possible).
– Do not completely discharge the battery.
– Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than 12 hours) when the traction battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
– Limit the use of fast charging.
– Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
– Avoid charging the vehicle at negative temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above +30°C.
– Do not use the vehicle's traction battery as a generator of energy.
– Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

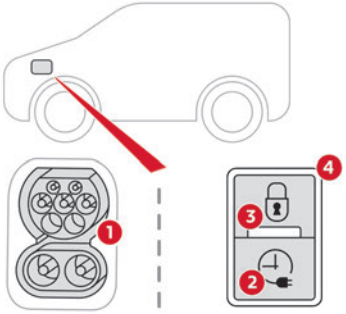
! In the event of damage to the traction battery

It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself.
Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

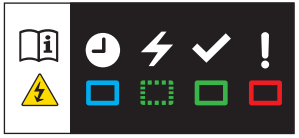
Disposal of the traction battery

The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of CITROËN are followed.
If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the CITROËN dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.
In accordance with regulations, CITROËN ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

Charging connectors and indicator lamps



1. Charging connectors (Electric)
2. Deferred charging activation button
3. Nozzle locking indicator lamp
   Fixed red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked in the connector.
   Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.
4. Charging indicator lamp



State of charging indicator lamp	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable.
Fixed blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging.
Fixed green	Charging complete. The charging indicator lamp goes off after about 2 minutes as the vehicle's functions go into standby. The indicator lamp comes on again when the vehicle is unlocked with the Keyless Entry and Start system or when a door is opened to indicate that the battery is fully charged.
Fixed red	Malfunction.

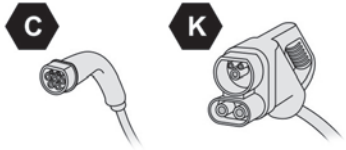
! In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire! Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The charging cable supplied with the vehicle (depending on version) is compatible with the electrical systems in the country of sale. When travelling abroad, check the compatibility of local electrical systems with the charging cable.
A full range of charging cables is available from your dealer.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for more information and to obtain suitable charging cables.

Identification labels on charging sockets/connectors

Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.

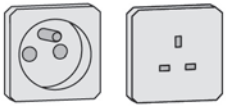


The meaning of each identification label is as follows:

Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type/Voltage range
C	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
C	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
K	Charging connector (vehicle side)	COMBO 2 (FF)	DC 50 V – 500 V

Standard charging, mode 2

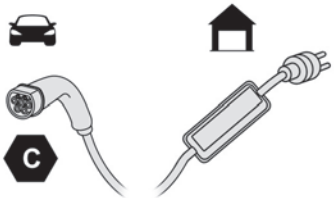
Domestic socket
(standard charging - alternating current (AC))



Mode 2 with a standard socket: 8 A maximum charging current.

Mode 2 with a Green'Up socket: 16 A maximum charging current.
To have this type of socket installed, call a professional installer.

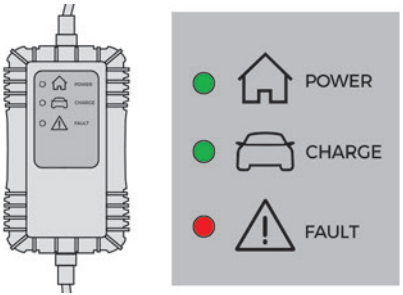
Specific domestic charging cable - mode 2 (AC)



Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side).

! Specific domestic charging cable (mode 2)
You must not damage the cable.
In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

Control unit (mode 2)



POWER
Green: electrical connection established; charging can begin.

CHARGE
Flashing green: charging in progress or temperature pre-conditioning activated.
Fixed green: charging complete.

FAULT
Red: fault; charging not permitted or must be stopped immediately. Check that everything is connected correctly and that the electrical system is not faulty.

If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lamps come on briefly.
If no indicator lamps come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker:
– If the circuit-breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that the electrical system is compatible and/or carry out any necessary repairs.
– If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, stop using the charging cable and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Control unit label - Recommendations

Refer to the handbook before use.

1. Incorrect use of this charging cable may result in fire, property damage and serious injury or death by electrocution!
2. Always use a correctly earthed power socket, protected by a 30 mA residual current device.
3. Always use an electrical socket protected by a circuit-breaker appropriate for the electrical circuit’s current rating.

4. The weight of the control unit must not be borne by the electrical socket, plug and cables.
5. Never use this charging cable if it is defective or in any way damaged.
6. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
7. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
8. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.
9. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
10. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
11. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
12. Only use this charging cable with CITROËN vehicles.
13. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.
14. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.

Control unit label - State of indicator lamps

	State of the indicator lamp
Off	○
On	● ●
Flashing	● ●

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
○	○	○		Not connected to the power supply or power is not available from the infrastructure.
● (green)	● (green)	● (red)		The control unit is currently performing a self-test.
● (green)	○	○		Connected only to the infrastructure or to the infrastructure and to the Electric Vehicle (EV) but no charging in progress.

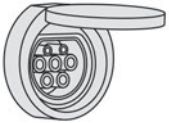
POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
(green)	(green)			Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is on charge or in a temperature pre-conditioning sequence.
(green)	(green)		100%	Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is waiting for charging or the charging of the EV is completed.
		(red)		Control unit malfunction. No charging allowed. If an error indicator reappears after a manual reset, the control unit must be checked by a CITROËN dealer before the next charge.
(green)	(green)	(red)		The control unit is in diagnostic mode.

Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.
Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

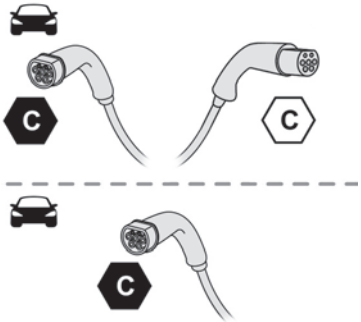
Accelerated charging unit (depending on version)
(accelerated charging - single-phase or three-phase alternating current (AC))



In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit: 32 A maximum charging current.

In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit (Wallbox): 32 A maximum charging current.

Charging cable, mode 3 (AC)



Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).

Accelerated charging unit
Do not disassemble or modify the charging unit - Risk of electrocution and/or fire!
Refer to the charging unit manufacturer's user manual for the operating instructions.

Superfast charging, mode 4

Fast public charger
(superfast charging - direct current (DC))

Charging cable, mode 4 (DC)
(integrated into the fast public charger)

Identification label **K** on the charging connector (vehicle side).
Only use fast public chargers where the cable length does not exceed 30 metres.

Charging the traction battery (Electric)

To recharge, connect the vehicle to a domestic electricity supply (domestic or accelerated charging) or to a fast public charger (superfast charging).

For a full charge, follow the desired charging procedure without pausing it, until it ends automatically. Charging can be either immediate or deferred (except fast public charger, mode 4).
You can stop domestic or accelerated charging at any time by unlocking the vehicle and removing the nozzle. For superfast charging, refer to the fast public charger.
For more information on the charging displays on the **Instrument panel** and the **Touch screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

i It is also possible to monitor the charging progress using the **MyCitroën App** application.
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

! As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

i **Cooling the traction battery**
The cooling fan in the engine compartment comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

! **Low load / Driving**
Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.

! **Low load / Parking**
If the outside temperature is negative, it is recommended not to park your vehicle outside for several hours at a low load (less than 20%).

i **Vehicle immobilised for 1 to 12 months**
Discharge the traction battery down to 2 or 3 bars on the charge level indicator on the instrument panel.
Do not connect the charging cable.
Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Disconnect the cable from the (+) terminal of the accessory battery in the engine compartment.
Connect a 12 V battery charger to the (+) and (-) terminals of the accessory battery about every 3 months in order to recharge the accessory battery and maintain an operating voltage.

Precautions

Our electric vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations on the maximum limits for electromagnetic fields, as issued by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP - 1998 Guidelines).

Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices

Ask your doctor about what precautions you should take, or ask the manufacturer of your implanted electro-medical device about whether its operation is guaranteed in an environment which complies with the ICNIRP recommendations.

! **If in doubt**
Domestic or accelerated charging: do not remain inside or near the vehicle, or near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.

For domestic or accelerated charging

! **Before charging**
Depending on the context:
► Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
► Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.
You should preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

During charging
While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop.
If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or boot) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.
Never work under the bonnet:
– Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
– The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

After charging
Check that the charging flap is closed.
Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

For superfast charging

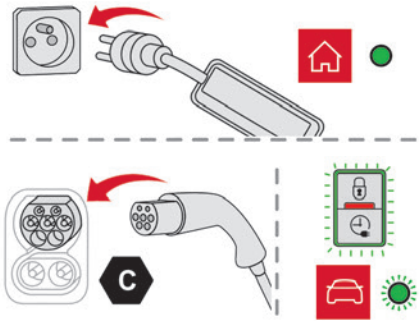
Before charging
Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.
If the exterior temperature is below:
– 0°C, charging times may be extended.
– -20°C, charging is still possible, but charging times may be extended even further (the battery has to be heated first).

After charging
Check that the charging flap is closed.

Connection

► Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, otherwise charging is not possible.
► Open the charging flap by pressing the push-button, and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

Domestic charging, mode 2

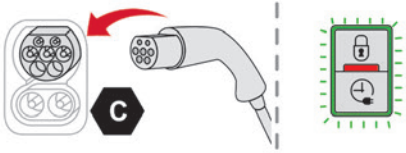


► Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.

When the connection is made, all of the indicator lamps on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator lamp remains on in green.
► Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
► Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lamps in the flap, then those on the control unit.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

Accelerated charging, mode 3



► Follow the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) user instructions.
► Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
► Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator lamp in the flap flashes green.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Superfast charging, mode 4

► Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
► Follow the instructions for use of the fast public charger and connect the cable from the fast public charger to the vehicle's connector.
The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator lamp in the flap.
If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.
The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Deferred charging

Settings

At a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop, with Bluetooth® audio system

By default, the deferred charging start time is set to midnight (vehicle time).
You can have the deferred charging start time modified.
Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

On a smartphone or tablet

You can programme the deferred charging function at any time via the **MyCitroën App** application.
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

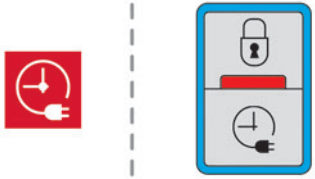
In the vehicle, with MyCitroën Drive

► In the **Energy** touch screen menu, select the **Charge** page.
► Set the charging start time.
► Press **OK**.
The setting is saved in the system.

Activation

> Deferred charging is only possible with modes 2 and 3.

► After programming the deferred charging, connect your vehicle to the desired charging equipment.



► Lock the vehicle.
► Press this button in the flap within one minute to activate the system (confirmed by the charging indicator lamp coming on in blue).

Disconnection

Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:
► If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it**.
► If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.
The red indicator lamp in the flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.
► In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within **30 seconds**.
The charging indicator lamp comes on in white.

> With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

When charging is complete, the green charging indicator lamp in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

Domestic charging, mode 2

The end of charging is confirmed when the green **CHARGE** indicator lamp on the control unit and the green charging indicator lamp in the flap come on fixed.

► Replace the protective cover on the charging nozzle and close the charging flap.

► Disconnect the control unit end of the charging cable from the domestic socket.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

The end of charging is indicated by the charging control unit and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator lamp in the flap.

► Hang up the nozzle on the charging unit and close the charging flap.

Superfast charging, mode 4

The end of charging is indicated by the charger and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator lamp in the flap.

► You can also pause charging by pressing this button in the flap (in mode 4 only).

► Hang up the nozzle on the charger.

► Depending on version, replace the protective cover on the lower section and close the charging flap.

When the charging nozzle is disconnected, a message on the instrument panel indicates that charging is complete, even if the charging nozzle was disconnected before full charging was completed.

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 30 minutes, you can continue to use functions such as the audio and telematics system, dipped beam headlamps or courtesy lamps.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.

To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
– For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
– For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.
Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Only use chains that have been designed for the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle.

Original tyre size	Type of chain
215/65 R16	12 mm link
215/60 R17	KONIG K-SUMMIT VAN K84
225/55 R17	

You can also use snow socks.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

► To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
► Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
► Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
► Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
► Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Towing device

Load distribution
► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.
Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use genuine towing devices and wiring harnesses approved by CITROËN. We recommend having them fitted by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use.

! Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.
Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball weight) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

i **Electric motor**
An electric vehicle may be fitted with a towing device.
It is therefore possible to tow a trailer or caravan.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for more information and to obtain a suitable towing device.

Roof bars/Roof rack

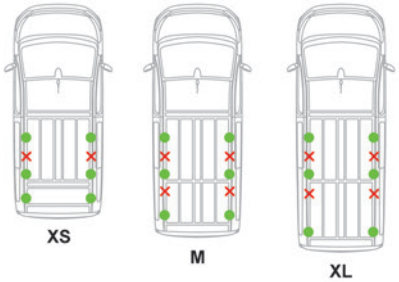
! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the roof bars and roof racks approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars and racks.

Recommendations
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

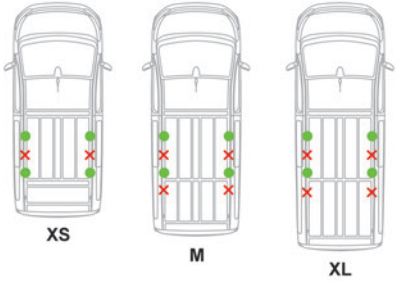
As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Roof bars

A maximum of 3 roof bars (or 2 bars for the version with panoramic sunroof) can be installed - use the positions marked in green.



With panoramic sunroof



Max. authorised load weight:
– over 2 roof bars: 100 kg,
– distributed over 3 roof bars: 150 kg.

To install the transverse roof bars, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:

► Open the fixing covers on each bar.
► Put each fixing point in place and lock them to the roof one by one.
► Ensure that the roof bars are correctly fitted (by shaking them).
► Close the fixing covers on each bar.
The bars can be interchanged and are adaptable to each pair of fixing points.

Roof racks

Max. authorised load weight:
– XS: 140 kg,
– M and XL: 170 kg.

To fit a roof rack, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:
► Place the roof rack on the roof aligned with the fixing points and secure each one to the roof in turn.
► Ensure that the roof rack is correctly fitted (by shaking it).

Bonnet

Stop & Start
Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan

or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!

Electric motor
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!
Before carrying out any work under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition, check that the **READY** indicator lamp is off on the instrument panel and disconnect the nozzle from the charging connector if it is connected.

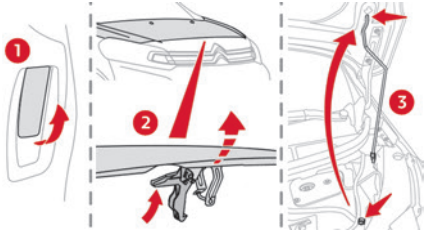
The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

Cooling of the engine when stopped
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Opening

► Open the door.



► Pull the release lever **1**, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.
► Tilt the safety catch **2** upwards, then raise the bonnet.
► Unclip the stay **3** from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

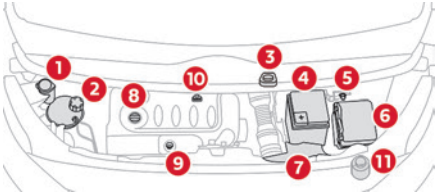
► Hold the bonnet and pull out the stay from the support slot.
► Clip the stay in its housing.
► Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
► Pull on the bonnet to check that it is locked correctly.

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine compartment

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.
The locations of the following components may vary:
– Air filter.
– Engine oil dipstick.
– Engine oil filler cap.
– Priming pump.

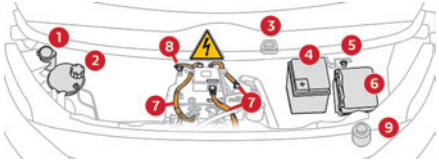
Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Priming pump*
11. Power steering fluid reservoir

Diesel fuel system
This system is under very high pressure.
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

Electric motor



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir (level only)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. 400 V electrical circuit
8. Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians
9. Power steering fluid reservoir

For more information on the **Charging system (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil

The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the

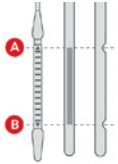
* Depending on engine.

ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.
It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

! In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.
► Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
► Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



► Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min).**
Do not start the engine if the level is:
– above mark **A**: contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
– below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

! **Oil grade**
Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop). Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.
► Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
► Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
► Top up the level if necessary.
► After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

i The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Brake fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.
To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

! Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Power steering fluid

The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. Check it, with the vehicle parked on level ground and with the engine cold, by reading the level on the filler neck.

Engine coolant

(Diesel)

It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.
The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.
If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Vehicle with electric motor
Do not top up the coolant.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Screenwash fluid

Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)

On reaching the minimum level in the particle filter additive tank, one of these warning lamps comes on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

Topping up

The topping up of this additive must be carried out quickly.
Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.
For more information on the **Indicators** and in particular the AdBlue range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.
To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)**, and in particular the supply of AdBlue, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery

The battery does not require any maintenance.
Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

i A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter

Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Oil filter

Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)

/ The start of clogging of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an alert message.
As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm, for about 15 minutes (until the warning lamp goes out).
If it is not possible to reach 37 mph (60 km/h), leave the engine running at idle for about 15 minutes, then drive with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm for 15 minutes.

! Do not switch off the engine until the filter is fully regenerated; repeated intervals can degrade the engine oil prematurely.
Regenerating the filter while the vehicle is stationary is not recommended.

i Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice water vapour coming from the exhaust while accelerating. These emissions have no impact on the vehicle's behaviour and the environment.

i **New vehicle**
During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox

The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Drive selector

The drive selector does not require any maintenance.

Manual parking brake

If you notice excessive brake lever travel or decreased effectiveness, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.
This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake

This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Brake pads

Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc/drum wear

For any information on checking brake disc/drum wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wheels and tyres

The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.
The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.
When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tyres as soon as possible.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.
Always mark the direction of rotation on the tyres that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tyres. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.
Winter or 4-seasons tyres can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

Shock absorbers

It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road holding and braking performance.
For your safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Timing and accessory kits

The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.
A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance travelled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that combines SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel Particle Filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and

water, which are harmless to health and the environment.

The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 20 litres.
Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 3,000 miles (5,000 km) (**which may vary considerably** depending on your driving style and the vehicle). An alert system is automatically triggered when the remaining range reaches 1,500 miles (2,400 km), i.e. once the reserve level has been reached.
Several alerts are triggered successively during the remaining 1,500 miles (2,400 km) until the tank is empty and the vehicle is immobilised.
If the estimated distance travelled by the vehicle between two services is greater than 3,000 miles (5,000 km), it will be necessary to top up the AdBlue.

For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding sections.

Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a device required by law prevents the engine from being restarted.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard and the vehicle starts polluting the environment.
In the event of a confirmed SCR system malfunction, it is essential to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. After 685 miles (1,100 km), a device is automatically activated to prevent the engine from starting.
In both cases, a range indicator indicates the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is immobilised.

Freezing of the AdBlue®
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

For the correct operation of the SCR system:
– Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
– Never transfer AdBlue® to another container as it would lose its purity.
– Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, as well as service stations equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot

be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface. In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into the tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

! Never pour the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** it is essential to wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, inserting the key into the ignition switch, or bringing the key for the "Keyless Entry and Start" system into the passenger compartment**. Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

► Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.
or
► With Keyless Entry and Start, press the "**START/STOP**" button to switch off the engine.

Accessing the AdBlue® tank

► To access the AdBlue® tank, open the front left-hand door.
► Turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.
► Release the cap upwards.
► With a container of AdBlue®: after checking the expiry date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.
► With an AdBlue® pump: insert the nozzle and fill the tank until the nozzle automatically cuts out.
► After filling, perform the same sequence of operations in reverse order.

! In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:
– Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
– Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out, if you are refilling at a service station.
The system only registers AdBlue® top-ups of 5 litres or more.

! If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "**Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible**" – it is essential to add at least 5 litres.

Free-wheeling

In certain situations, it is necessary to put the vehicle into free-wheeling mode (e.g. towing, on a rolling road, automatic car wash (Wash mode), rail or sea transport).
The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

! Never leave the vehicle unattended with the vehicle into free-wheeling mode.

With manual or automatic gearbox and manual parking brake

To release them

► With the vehicle stationary and engine running, depress the brake pedal.
► With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever into neutral.
► With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector to mode **N**.
► Release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the engine.

Reverting to normal operation

► Apply the parking brake.
► With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector to mode **P**.

With a manual gearbox and electric parking brake

To release them

► With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, move the gear selector to the neutral position.
► While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the engine.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and apply the parking brake.

With an automatic gearbox and electric parking brake

To release them

► With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, set the gear selector to **N**.
► While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the engine.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition again.
► While depressing the brake pedal, press the control lever to release the parking brake.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

Reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and select mode **P**.

With drive selector and electric parking brake

Release procedure

► With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N**.

Within 5 seconds:

► Depress and hold the brake pedal, then observe this order: switch off the engine and move the push selector forwards or backwards.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition.
► Place your foot on the brake and press the electric parking brake control to release it.
► Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

! A message is displayed on the instrument panel to confirm the unlocking of the wheels for 15 minutes.
When the vehicle is free-wheeling, the audio system cannot be updated (message displayed on the instrument panel).

After 15 minutes or reverting to normal operation

► While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and select mode **P**.

Keyless Entry and Start
You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on again, then switching it off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away and deactivate the "hands-free" function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access).
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).

Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Textured paint

This type of paint reacts under the effect of light, through variations in appearance and finish that highlight the lines and contours of the vehicle. Its varnish is enriched with particles that remain visible and create a unique satin effect with relief. Its slightly granular texture gives it a surprising touch.

Never attempt to clean without water.
Never clean your vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash.

Never select the programme with hot wax finish.
Never use high-pressure lances equipped with brushes - risk of scratching paint!
Never apply glossy polish or preservatives to the bodywork or alloy wheels; these products irreversibly reveal glossy or spotted areas.

Choose high-pressure wash, or at least high-flow water jet.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.
Only a clean microfibre cloth is recommended for wiping the vehicle; pass it over the vehicle without rubbing.
Carefully wipe off any fuel spilt on the bodywork using a soft cloth, then allow to dry.
Clean off minor marks (for example, finger marks), using a maintenance product recommended by CITROËN.

Decals

(Depending on version)

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Leather

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.
It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol).
Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene).
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

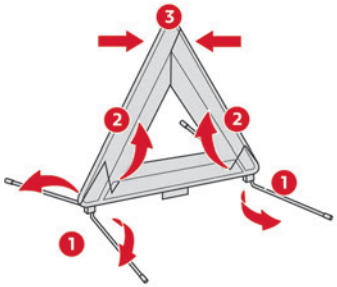
Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.
Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product.
Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Warning triangle

This reflective and dismantlable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

Before getting out of the vehicle
Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

Assembling and placing the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.
► Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
Before starting to prime the system, it is essential to put at least 5 litres of Diesel into the fuel tank.

For more information on **Refuelling** and on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

For non-BlueHDi versions, the fuel system components are located in the engine compartment; this may be under a removable cover.

For more information on the **Engine compartment**, in particular the location of these components under the bonnet, refer to the corresponding section.

1.5 BlueHDi engines

► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine.
If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

2.0 BlueHDi engines

► Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
► Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
► Repeat the operation 10 times.
► Operate the starter motor to start the engine.
If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

2.0 HDi engines

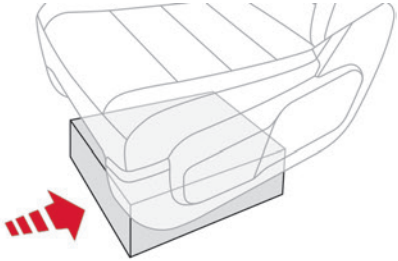
► Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.
► Loosen the degassing bolt.

► Operate the priming pump until fuel appears in the transparent tube.
► Retighten the degassing bolt.
► Operate the starter motor until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
► If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.
► Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

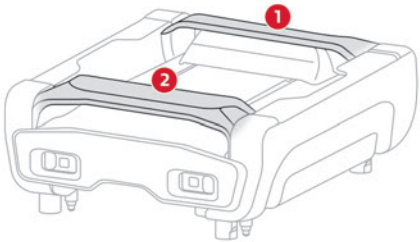
Tool box

Access the tools

Access

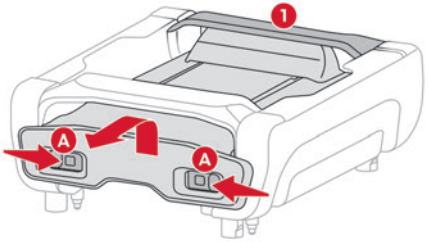


The tool box is located under the left-hand front seat.

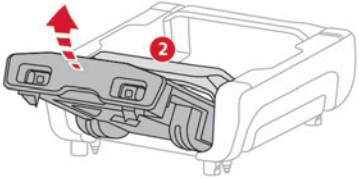


As a safety measure, bars **1** and **2** prevent the box escaping from its housing, if it is not correctly secured.

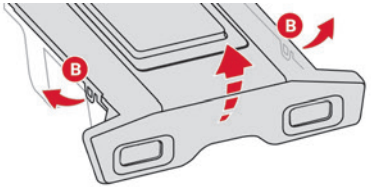
Removing and opening



► Press latches **A** and slide them inwards to release the box.
► To take it past bar **1**, raise the box slightly then pull it as far as it will go.



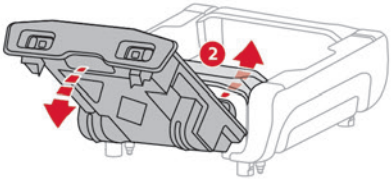
► Then, lift the box upwards to take it past bar **2**.



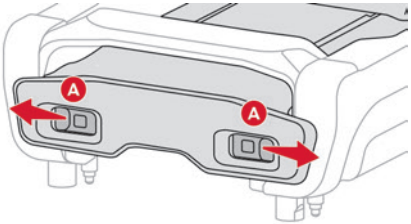
► Unclip fixings **B** on the cover, then open it for access to the tools.

Storage

► Refit the cover on the box and clip fixings **B**.



► Position the box with the front inclined upwards.
► To take it past bar **2**, push the box in and down.
► To take it past bar **1**, raise the box slightly then push it fully in.



► Once the box is **fully home** in its housing, push it against the floor carpet then slide latches **A** outwards to secure it.

> Pull on the box to check that it is secure in its housing.

Temporary puncture repair kit

> Visit this link to view explanatory videos: http://q-r.to/bagGl9

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

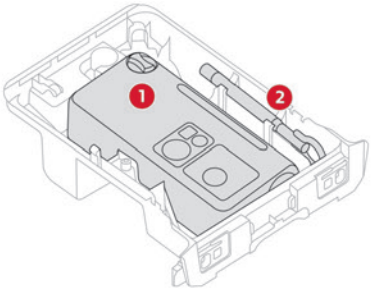
Access to the kit

This kit is stowed in a tool box.

> For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

List of tools

These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment. Do not use them for any other purpose.

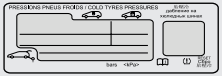


1. 12 V compressor.
   Contains a sealant cartridge for the temporary repair of a tyre and can also be used for adjusting tyre pressures.
2. Towing eye.

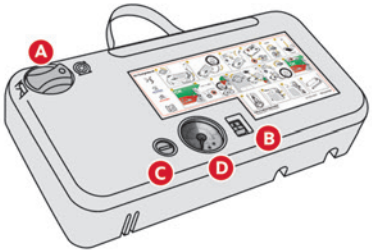
> For more information on **Towing**, please refer to the corresponding section.

> Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.

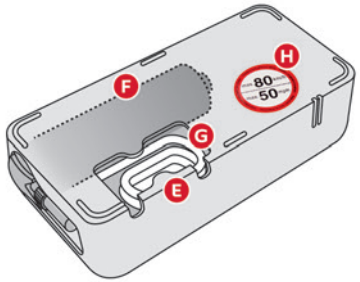
For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.



Composition of the kit



A. "Repair" or "Inflation" position selector.
B. On **I**/off **O** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).



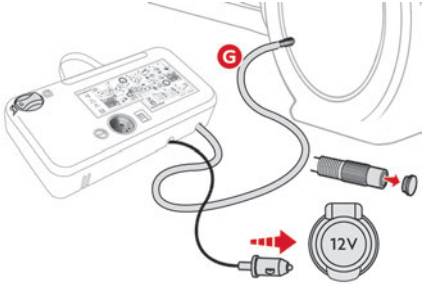
E. Compartment housing a cable with an adaptor for a 12 V socket.
F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair and inflation.
H. Speed limit sticker.

! The vehicle's electrical system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.
Only use the two 12 V sockets, located at the **front**, to connect your compressor.

Repair and sealing procedure

► Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
► Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
► Switch off the ignition.
► Turn the selector **A** to the "Repair" position.
► Check that switch **B** is in position "**O**".

! Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated the tyre.



► Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
► Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
► Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
► Connect the compressor's electrical plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
► Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

► Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

i Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.

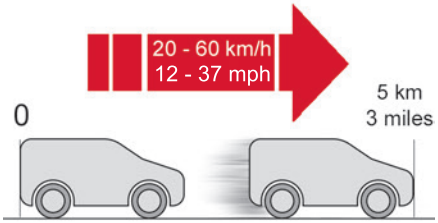
► Switch on the compressor by moving switch **B** to position **I** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

i If after approximately seven minutes this pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

► Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe. Take care to avoid contaminating the vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

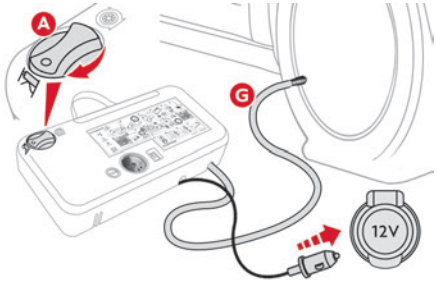
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



► Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.

► Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

Inflating, adjusting and checking tyre pressures



► Turn selector **A** to the "Inflation" position.

► Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.

► Connect the white pipe to the valve on the repaired tyre.

► Reconnect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

► Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

! Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
You must tell the technician that the kit has been used. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

► Adjust the tyre pressure using the compressor (to inflate: set switch **B** to position "**I**"; to deflate: set switch **B** to position "**O**" and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label located by the driver's door.
A subsequent loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully sealed; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have your vehicle repaired.

► Remove the kit and stow it.

! ► Drive at reduced speed (50 mph (80 km/h) max.), limiting the distance travelled to approximately 125 miles (200 km).

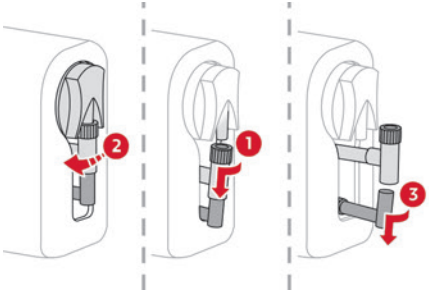
i The compressor can also be used, without injecting sealant, to check and adjust the tyre pressures.

i If after approximately 7 minutes the required pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is irreparably damaged; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

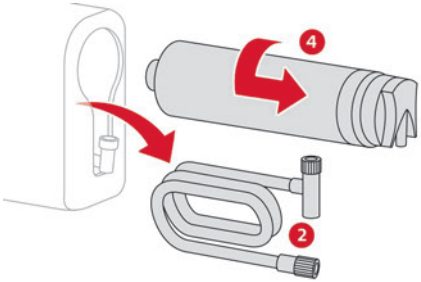
! Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with a repaired tyre; see a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the tyre changed.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Removing the pipe and cartridge



► Turn the pipe assembly **2** to the left until it comes into contact with the unit.
► Disconnect the connector **1** from the cartridge by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
► Pull the pipe assembly **2** out slightly, then disconnect the connector **3** from the air intake pipe by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.



► Remove the pipe assembly **2**.
► Hold the compressor up vertically.
► Unscrew the cartridge **4** from the bottom.
To fit the new cartridge and new pipe, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Beware of fluid discharge.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; it must be replaced even if only partly used.
After use, do not discard the cartridge in standard waste, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new cartridge, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Spare wheel

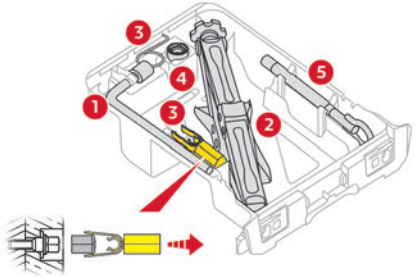
i Visit this link to view explanatory videos:
http://q-r.to/bagGl9

Access to the tools

The tools are stowed in a tool box.

i For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

List of tools



1. Wheelbrace.
   Used to remove the wheel bolts and raise/lower the jack.

2. Jack.
   Used to raise the vehicle.
3. Wheel bolt cover/wheel trim removal tool.
   Depending on the vehicle's equipment, this is used to remove the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels or the wheel trim on steel wheels.
4. Socket for "anti-theft" wheel bolts.
   Used to adapt the wheelbrace to the special "anti-theft" bolts.
5. Towing eye.

i For more information on **Towing**, please refer to the corresponding section.

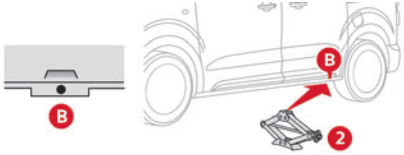
! These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.
Do not use them for any other purpose.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Accessing the spare wheel

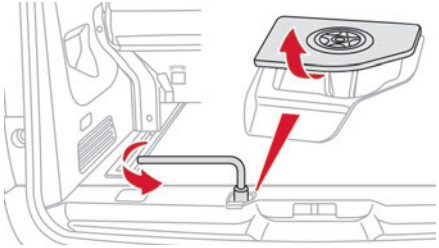
► Access to the spare wheel is from the rear.
► Depending on version, open the side-hinged doors or the tailgate.

i To avoid any unwanted opening of the electric side door(s), deactivate the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function in the vehicle configuration menu.
For more information on the **Hands-free sliding side door**, refer to the corresponding section.

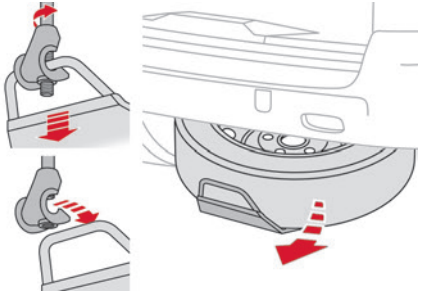


► If the vehicle is fitted with a towbar, raise the rear of the vehicle using the jack (must be at jacking point **B**) to allow sufficient space to remove the spare wheel.

Remove the spare wheel from the carrier

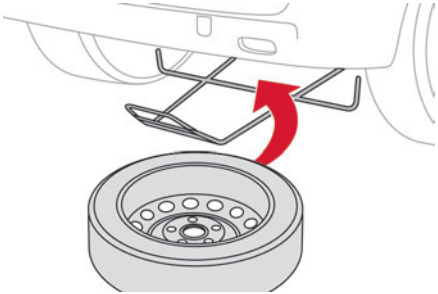


► Access the carrier bolt, located on the rear door sill.
► Slacken the bolt using the wheelbrace (about 14 turns) until the carrier is low enough to allow the carrier hook to be disengaged.



► Release the carrier from the hook, take the spare wheel and place it next to the wheel to be changed.

Refit the spare wheel in the carrier



► Position the wheel facing the carrier.
► Progressively return the wheel to the carrier by pushing alternately at the left and right until it is clear of the hook fixing area.
► Engage the carrier on the hook, then tighten the bolt using the wheelbrace until the bolt is fully tightened.

Tyre in the carrier

You can change the size of the tyre on the spare wheel by following the instructions below.

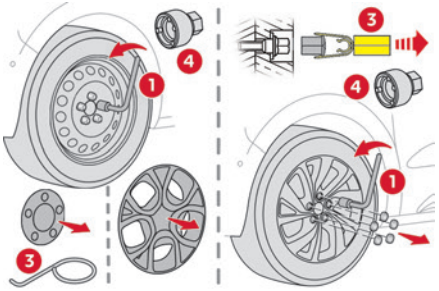
Original tyre size	XS-M	XL
215/65 R16	Placing a 225 wheel in the carrier is prohibited.	There is no restriction.
215/60 R17		
215/60 R17 M&S		
225/55 R17	Placing a 215 wheel in the carrier is not recommended (risk of noise).	

ℹ A punctured tyre of size 215 or 225 can be placed in the carrier.

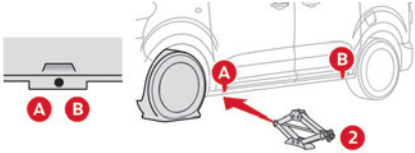
Removing a wheel

! Parking the vehicle

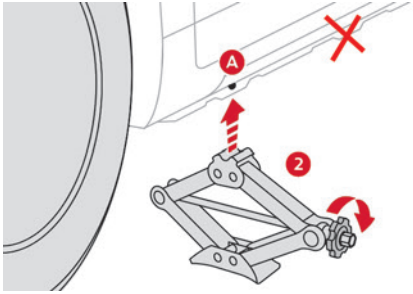
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P** then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.
With a drive selector, place the gear selector in position **P** then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.
Apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode (for an electric parking brake), and check that the indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.
Ensure that the occupants have left the vehicle and are located in a safe place.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.
With an electric parking brake, place a chock against the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being replaced.

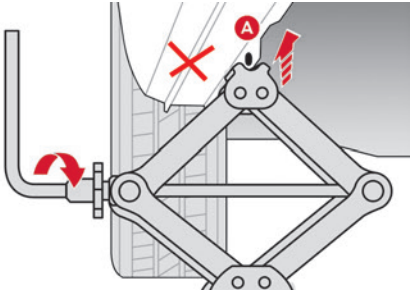


► With a steel wheel, remove the bolt cover using tool **3** or the wheel trim by hand.
► With an alloy wheel, remove the cover from each of the bolts using tool **3**.
► If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **4** to wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
► **Slacken** (without removing) the other wheel bolts using just wheelbrace **1**.



► Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the **A** or **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

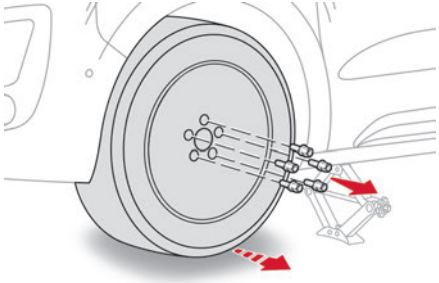




► Use the knob to extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used; contact surface **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.

► Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground, to then easily fit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

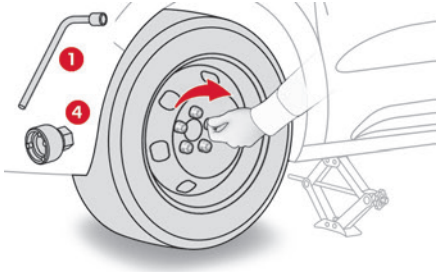
! Risk of injury!
Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse.
Ensure that the jack is positioned strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is correctly centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing.



► Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.

► Remove the wheel.

Fitting the wheel

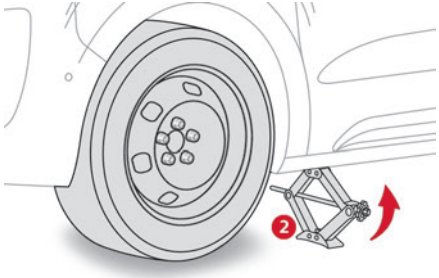


► Fit the wheel on the hub.

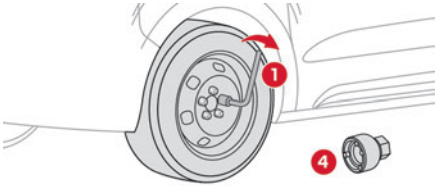
► Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.

► If fitted to your vehicle, **pre-tighten** the anti-theft bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the anti-theft socket **4**.

► **Pre-tighten** the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.

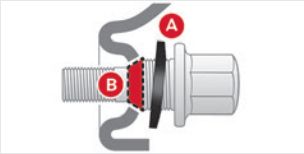


► Lower the vehicle again fully.
► Fold jack **2** and remove it.



► If fitted to your vehicle, tighten the anti-theft bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the anti-theft socket **4**.
► **Tighten** the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
► Stow the tools in the tool box.

Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel



If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.

After changing a wheel
Stow the punctured wheel in the carrier.

Go promptly to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Some driving aid functions should be disabled, e.g. the Active Safety Brake.

If your vehicle has tyre under-inflation detection, check the tyre pressures and reinitialise the system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Tyre under-inflation detection
The steel spare wheel does not have a sensor.

Wheel with wheel trim
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by aligning the cutout with the valve and then pushing the trim into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

Changing a bulb

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
– **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
– Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
– When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

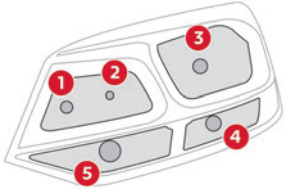
Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp / lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!
Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.
It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

Halogen bulbs (Hx)
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Opening the bonnet/Accessing the bulbs
Proceed with caution when the engine is hot - risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!

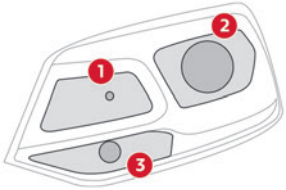
After changing a bulb
To refit, carry out the operations in reverse order to removal.
Close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamps.

Model with halogen headlamps



1. Sidelamps (W5W-5W)
2. Main beam headlamps (H1-55W)
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W)
4. Daytime running lamps (W21W LL-21W)
5. Direction indicators (PY21W-21W amber)

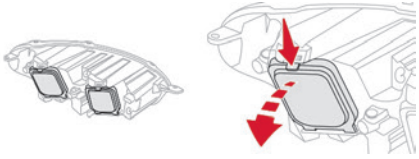
Model with Xenon headlamps



1. Main beam headlamps (H1-55W)
2. Dipped beam headlamps (D8S-25W)
3. Direction indicators (PY21W-21W amber)

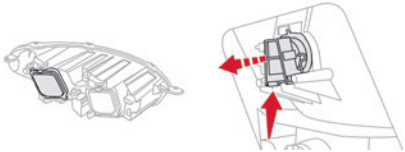
Be aware of the zone behind the right lamp (vehicle direction), which may be hot with a risk of burning (degassing hoses).

Accessing the bulbs



► Press the upper clip on the cover then tilt it backwards to remove it.

Dipped beam headlamps

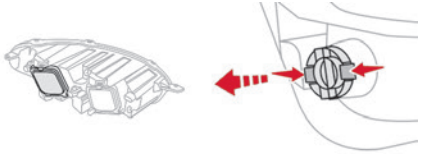


► Press the lower clip on the connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
► Pull out the bulb and replace it.

When refitting the connector and bulb in the lamp unit, correctly position the assembly in its housing until it clicks into place.

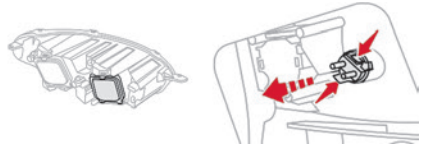
Do not touch the Xenon lamps (D8S) – risk of electrocution!
If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Daytime running lamps



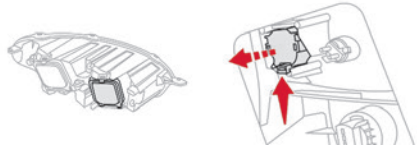
► Press the two side clips on the connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
► Pull out the bulb and replace it.

Sidelamps



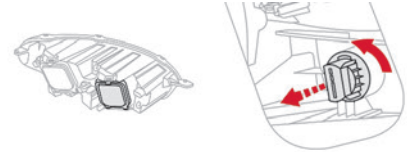
► Press the two side clips on the connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
► Pull out the bulb and replace it.

Main beam headlamps



► Press the lower clip on the connector and remove the assembly of connector and bulb.
► Pull out the bulb and replace it.

Direction indicators



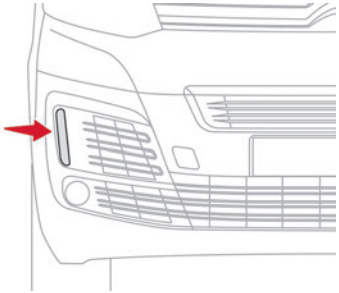
► Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

► Remove the bulb holder and replace the faulty bulb.

> i Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

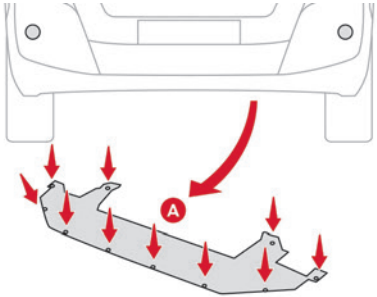
> i Amber-coloured bulbs must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps

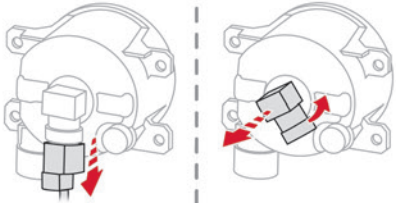


For the replacement of these bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A replacement kit for the LEDs is available from CITROËN dealers.

Front foglamps (H11-55W)



► Underneath the front bumper, slacken the bolts on deflector **A**, then remove it.



► Press the locking clip and disconnect the connector.
► Unscrew the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
► Replace the faulty bulb.

> i You can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to replace these bulbs.

Direction indicator side repeater

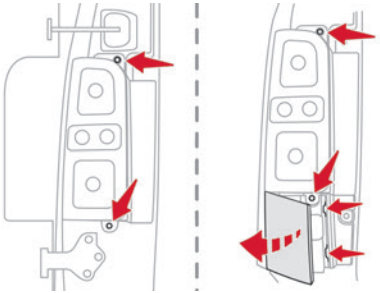
– Push the repeater towards the rear and release it.
– When refitting, engage the repeater towards the front and then slide it backwards.
Amber coloured bulbs (direction indicators and side repeaters) must be replaced with bulbs of identical specification and colour.

Rear lamps

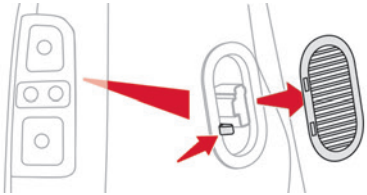
1. Brake lamps/Sidelamps (P21/5W-21/5W)
2. Direction indicators (PY21W-21W amber)
3. Reversing lamps (P21W-21W)
4. Foglamps/Sidelamps (P21/4W-21/4W)

For vehicles with interior trim, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the work done.

► Identify the defective lamp and then, depending on the version, open the rear doors or the tailgate.

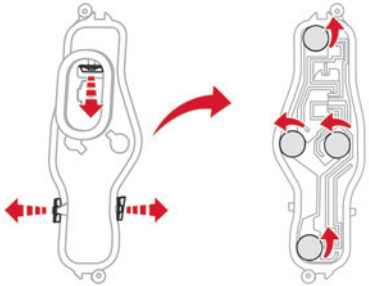


► With side-hinged doors, unscrew the 2 fixing screws from the outside.
► With the tailgate, unclip the plastic trim from the outside and then tilt it outwards to remove it. Then unscrew the 2 fixing screws.



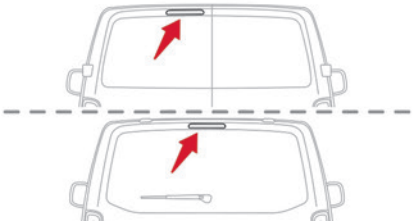
► From the inside, and depending on the version, remove the ventilation grille.

► While holding the lamp in place, press the clip on the inside then carefully remove the lamp.
► Disconnect the electrical connector.

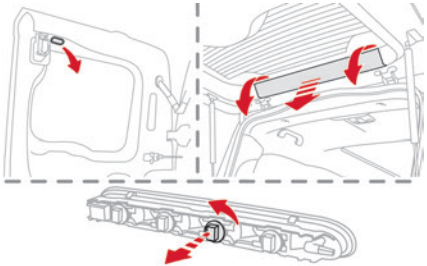


► Spread the 3 lugs slightly, then extract the bulb holder.
► Remove the faulty bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn clockwise.
► Replace the bulb.

Third brake lamp (W5W - 5W)

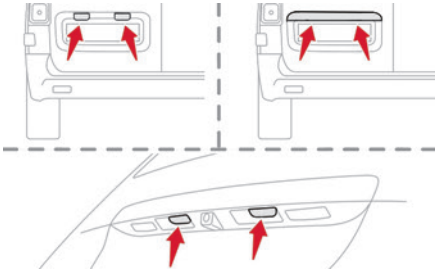


► Depending on version, open the rear left-hand door or tailgate.



► With side-hinged doors, remove the plastic cover with the aid of a screwdriver.
► With a tailgate, unclip the trim at each end, rotating it from bottom to top, then unclip the centre clips to remove it.
► Using a screwdriver through the aperture, push the lamp towards the outside.
► Disconnect the electrical connector and then remove the lamp.
► Unscrew the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and replace the faulty bulb.
To refit, press on the lamp to clip it into place.

Number plate lamps (W5W-W)



► Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs on the exterior of the lens.
► Push it outwards to unclip it.
► Remove the lens and replace the faulty bulb.
To refit, press the lens to clip it in.

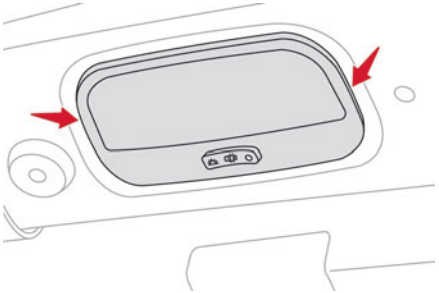
Courtesy lamps (front and rear)

LED courtesy lamps

For the replacement of these bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A replacement kit for the LEDs is available from CITROËN dealers.

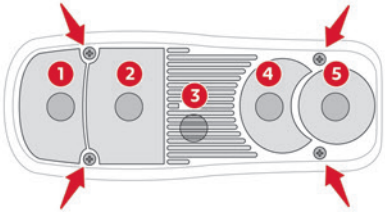
Courtesy lamps with bulb

W5W-5W



► Unclip the lens by inserting a thin screwdriver into the slots at each side of the courtesy lamp.
► Remove the bulb and change it.
To refit, clip the lens in place and ensure that it is secure.

Platform cab (rear lamps)



1. Direction indicators (P21W-21W).
2. Brake lamps (P21W-21W).
3. Sidelamps (R10W-10W).
4. Reversing lamps (P21W-21W).
5. Foglamps (P21W-21W).

► Locate the faulty bulb.
► Unscrew the 4 fixing screws from the lens unit and remove it.
► Remove the faulty bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn clockwise.
► Change the bulb.

Fuses

Changing a fuse
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop
The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

Installing electrical accessories
The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its recommendations, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

12 V battery / Accessory battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Electric motor

Flat accessory battery
It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

Precautions before working on the accessory battery
Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

Jump-starting another vehicle
Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

Symbols

No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.

Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.

Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.

The vehicle's battery contains sulphuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.

For more information, refer to the handbook.

Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

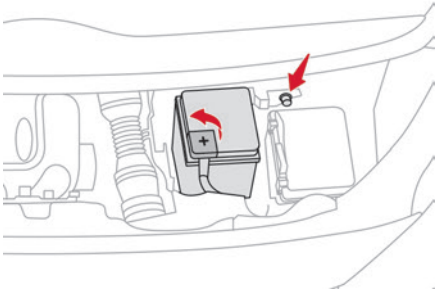
! Always replace the battery with one of equivalent specification.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

► Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.

► Secure the bonnet stay.



► Remove the plastic cover to access the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

The battery (-) terminal is not accessible.

There is a remote earth point near the battery.

i For more information on the **Bonnet** and the **Engine**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Starting using another battery

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

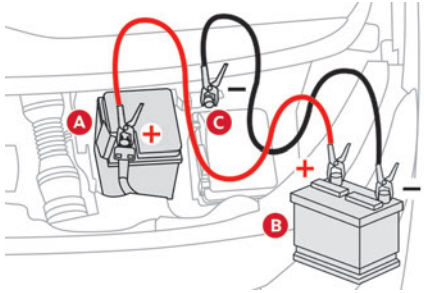
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.

► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of

the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).
► Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.
► Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
► Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
► Wait for it to return to idle.
► Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
► Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

! To disconnect, proceed in reverse order.

! **Automatic gearbox**
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

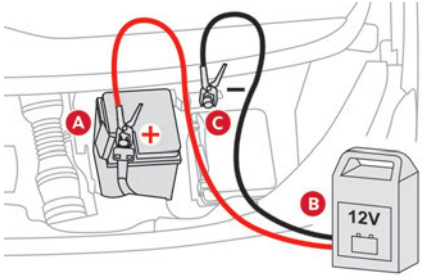
For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:
– When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.
– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

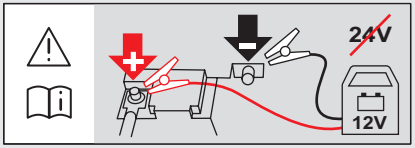
► Switch the ignition off.
► Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



► Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
► Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
► Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**.
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

► At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

! If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



! **Frozen battery**
Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

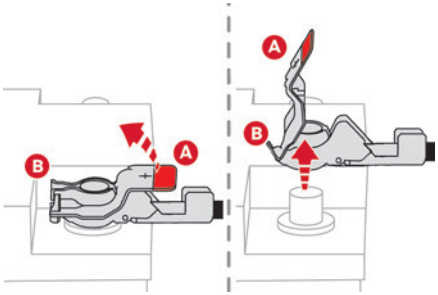
Disconnecting/reconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.
Before disconnecting the battery:
► Close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows).
► Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
► Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

After accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

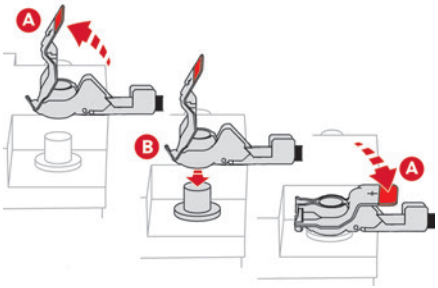
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



► Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.
► Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
► Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



► Raise lever **A** fully.
► Refit open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
► Push clamp **B** fully down.
► Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
► Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.

! Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:
– Remote control key or electronic key (depending on version).
– Electric windows.
– Date and time.
– Preset radio stations.

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable mechanical device.

General recommendations
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:
– broken down on a motorway or main road;
– not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
– not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;
– towing with only two wheels on the ground;
– four-wheel drive vehicle;
– no approved towbar available.

Before towing the vehicle, it is essential to put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode.
For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

Electric motor
An electric vehicle cannot under any circumstances be used to tow another vehicle.
However, it may be used, for example, to exit a rut.

With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral.
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **N**.
Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to some braking components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

	Towing constraints			
Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	**Front wheels on the ground**	**Rear wheels on the ground**	**Flatbed**	**4 wheels on the ground with towbar**
Internal combustion/Manual	✓	✓	✓	✓
Internal combustion/Automatic	✗	✓	✓	✗
Electric	✗	✓	✓	✗

In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

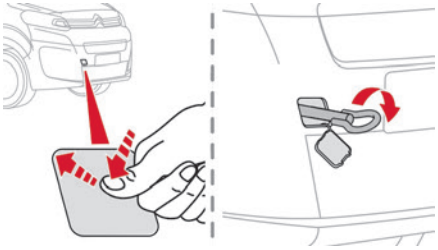
Accessing the towing eye

The towing eye is stowed in the tool box.

For more information on the **Tool box**, refer to the corresponding section.

Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



– Slide a finger from the centre of the cover plate to the upper corner (as shown above) to unclip it.

To be towed:

► Screw the towing eye in fully.

► Install the towbar.

► Put the gearbox into neutral.

Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (e.g. braking, transmission) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

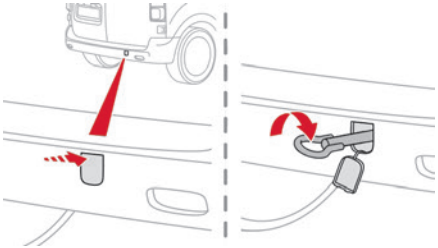
► Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.

► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles in accordance with the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



– Press the cover (as shown above) to unclip it.

To tow:

► Screw the towing eye in fully.

► Install the towbar.

► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.

► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

! When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

! Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

Engines and towed loads - Diesel EURO 4/5

Engines		HDi 150 BVM6		HDi 150 EAT6/EAT8		BlueHDi 150 BVM6		BlueHDi 150 EAT6/ EAT8	
Gearboxes		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 6/8-speed		Manual 6-speed		Automatic 6/8-speed	
Code		DW10F				DW10FD			
Cubic capacity (cc)		1,997				1,997			
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		110				110			
Fuel		Diesel				Diesel			
Length		XS, M, XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*, XL* (L2/L3)*	XS, M, XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*, XL* (L2/L3)*	XS, M, XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*, XL* (L2/L3)*	XS, M, XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*, XL* (L2/L3)*
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	6-7-8-9 seats	1,100		800		1,100		800	
Unbraked trailer (kg)		750		750		750		750	
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)		44		32		44		32	

* Increased payload.

Engines and towed loads - Diesel EURO 6.2

Engines		BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 120 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 120 S&S EAT8	
Gearboxes		**Manual 6-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**		Automatic 8-speed	
Code		DV5RUCd - ML6 - STT		DV5RUC - ML6 - STT		DW10FEU - AMN8 - STT	
Cubic capacity (cc)		1,499		1,499		1,997	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		75		88		88	
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	
Length		XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	6-7-8-9 seats	1,800	2,000	1,800	2,000	2,300	2,500
Unbraked trailer (kg)		750	750	750	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)		72	80	72	80	92	100

Engines	BlueHDi 150 S&S BVM6	BlueHDi 180 S&S EAT8
Gearboxes	Automatic 6-speed	Automatic 8-speed
Code	DW10FD - ML6 - STT	DW10FDCU - AMN8 - STT
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,997	1,997
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	110	130

* Increased payload.

Engines		**BlueHDi 150 S&S BVM6**		**BlueHDi 180 S&S EAT8**	
Gearboxes		Automatic 6-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code		DW10FD - ML6 - STT		DW10FDCU - AMN8 - STT	
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel	
Length		XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	6-7-8-9 seats	2,300	2,500	2,300	2,500
Unbraked trailer (kg)		750	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)		92	100	92	100

Engines and towed loads - Diesel EURO 6.3

Engines		BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 120 S&S BVM6		BlueHDi 140 S&S BVM6	
Gearboxes		**Manual 6-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**		Manual 6-speed	
Code		DV5RUCd - ML6 - STT		DV5RUC - ML6 - STT		DW10FDDU - ML6 - STT	
Cubic capacity (cc)		1,499		1,499		1,997	
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		75		88		103	
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	
Length		XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	6-7-8-9 seats	1,400		1,400		1,900	1,900
Unbraked trailer (kg)		750		750		750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)		84		84		84	84

Engines	BlueHDi 140 S&S EAT8	BlueHDi 180 S&S EAT8
Gearboxes	Automatic 8-speed	Automatic 8-speed
Code	DW10FDDU - AMN8 - STT	DW10FDCU - AMN8 - STT
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,997	1,997
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	103	130

* Increased payload.

Engines		**BlueHDi 140 S&S EAT8**		**BlueHDi 180 S&S EAT8**	
Gearboxes		Automatic 8-speed		Automatic 8-speed	
Code		DW10FDDU - AMN8 - STT		DW10FDCU - AMN8 - STT	
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel	
Length		XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*	XS/M/XL (L1/L2/L3)	M*/XL* (L2/L3)*
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	6-7-8-9 seats	1,900	1,900	1,900	1,900
Unbraked trailer (kg)		750	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)		84	84	84	84

Motor and towed loads - Electric

Electric motor

Electric motor	
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	100/136
Traction battery	
Technology	Lithium-Ion
Battery pack	S: 18 modules (L1/L2/L3) XL: 27 modules (L2/L3)*
Installed capacity (kWh)	50 or 75
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 8 or 16
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32
Superfast charging	**Mode 4**
Direct current (DC) voltage	400

* Battery pack not available for right-hand drive Combi, Business, Feel, Shine, Business Lounge vehicles.

Towed loads

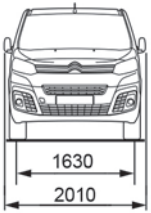
Model codes:	ZZKXZ
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,000
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	60

Model codes:		V1ESZ/V1EZZ/VZESZ/VZEZZ
Code:		MEL ZAE BATT S/ MEL ZAE BATT XL
Length		XS, M, XL (L1/L2/L3)
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	5-6-7-8-9 seats	1,000
Unbraked trailer (kg)		750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)		60

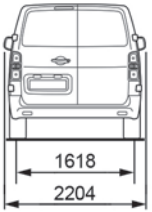
Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

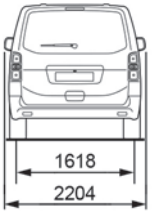
Mirrors folded



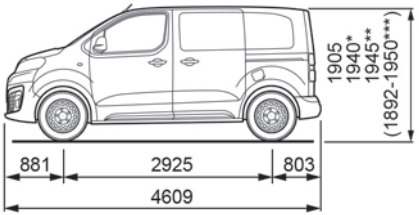
Side-hinged doors



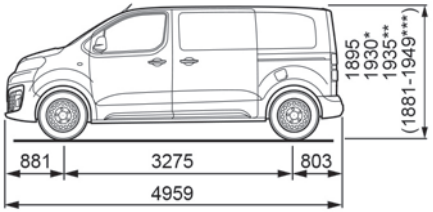
Tailgate



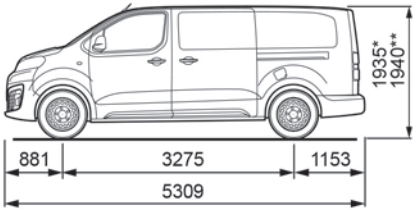
XS



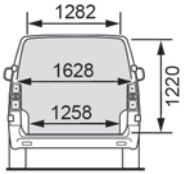
M



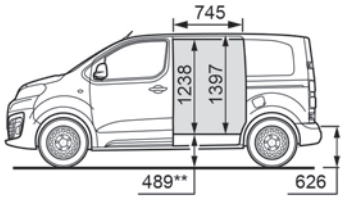
XL

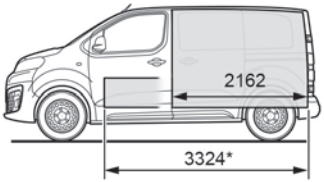


* Increased payload.
** Increased payload with high body.
*** Depending on country of sale.

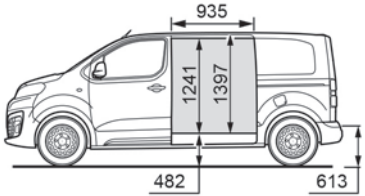


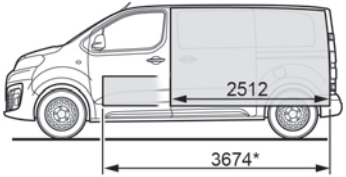
XS



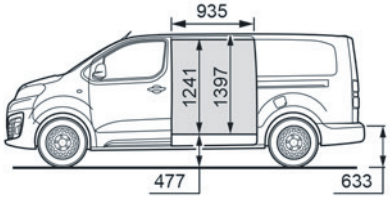


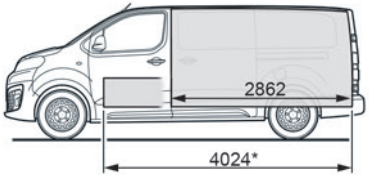
M





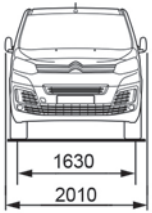
XL



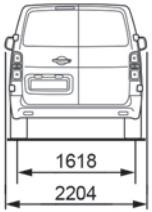


* With Moduwork, flap removed.
** Vehicle empty and not loaded.

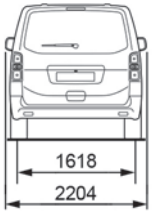
Mirrors folded



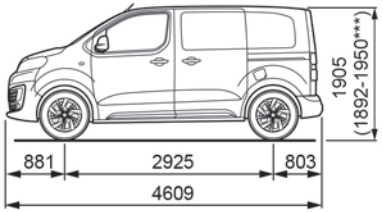
Side-hinged doors



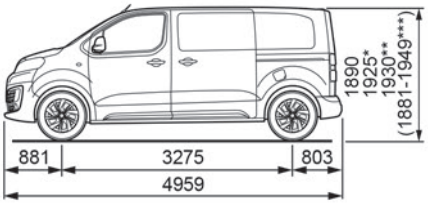
Tailgate



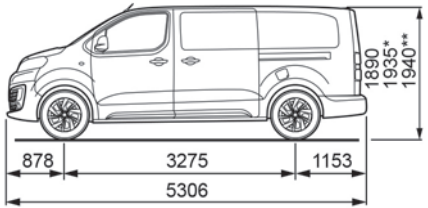
XS



M



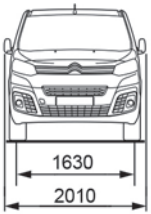
XL

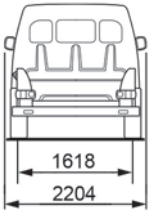


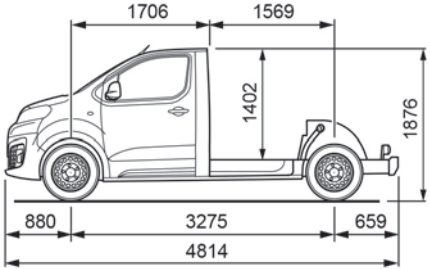
* Increased payload.

** Increased payload with high body.
*** Depending on country of sale.

Platform cab



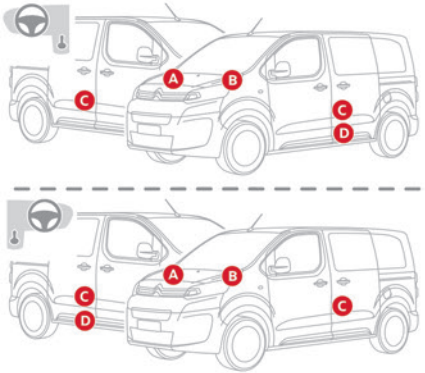




Identification markings

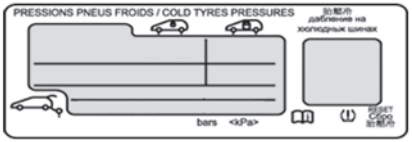
9

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.
Stamped on the chassis.
B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.
Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.
C. Manufacturer's label.
Affixed to the centre pillar.
Bears the following information:
– Manufacturer’s name.
– European whole vehicle type approval number.
– Vehicle Identification number (VIN).

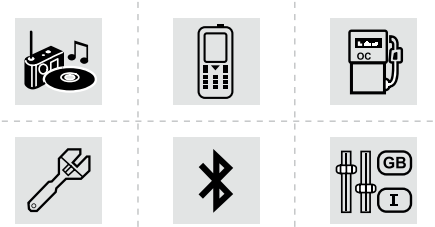
– Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
– Gross train weight (GTW).
– Maximum weight on the front axle.
– Maximum weight on the rear axle.
D. Tyres/paint code label.



Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tyres:
– Tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
– Tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
– Spare tyre inflation pressure.
Also indicates the paint colour code.

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres). In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a CITROËN dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

Bluetooth® audio system



The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth® mobile telephone with the Bluetooth® hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps

Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC / Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).

Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activate/Deactivate automatic volume adjustment (based on the vehicle's speed).

LIST **Radio :**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media :
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Select the screen display mode, between: Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK Confirm or display contextual menu.

1 Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

◀◀ ▶▶ **Radio:**
Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.

▲ ▼ **Radio:**
Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Media:
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.

Cancel the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU Access the main menu.

TA Activate/Deactivate TA function (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

Steering-mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

SRC / **Other than telephone call:**
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

MENU Access to the main menu.

\+ Increase volume.

Mute / Restore the sound.

– Decrease volume.

SRC / **Other than telephone call:**
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous / next preset radio station.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous / next track.
Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.
Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.

"Multimedia": Media settings, Radio settings.

"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

"**Trip computer**".

"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.

"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.

"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

Move from one menu to another.

OK Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up / down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, car parks, underground, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS tracking mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out on the display.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, RDS station tracking may not be possible nationwide, as radio stations do not always cover the entire country. This can explain the loss of reception of a station during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

Select "**Frequency tracking (RDS)**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display TEXT INFOS

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

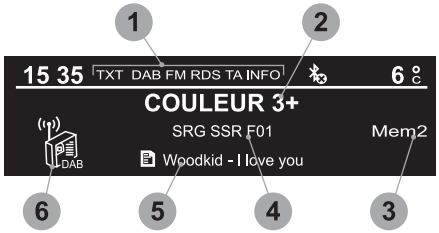
▲ ▼ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Depending on version

If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



1 Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.
2 Display showing the name of the current station.
3 Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.
4 Display showing the name of the “multiplex” service being used.
5 RadioText (TXT) display for the current radio station.
6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

When changing region, updating the list of preset radio stations is recommended.

LIST Full list of radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex / ensemble” services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex / ensemble".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex / ensemble".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen , press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB / FM station tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).
When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

MENU	Press the **MENU** button.
◀◀ ▶▶	Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.
▲ ▼	Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option struck out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB socket

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Any additional devices connected to the system must comply with the standard applicable to the product and/or the standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:
– **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
– **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
– **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
– **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK	Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.
▲ ▼	Press this button to select the chosen play mode.
OK	Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

◀◀ ▶▶	Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.
▲ ▼	Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST	Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.

Select by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**".
Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.

Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list.
Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* in the list.

Input AUX socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

Any additional devices connected to the system must comply with the standard applicable to the product and/or the standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".
First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Controls are managed via the portable device.

Do not connect the same device to both the auxiliary jack socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels.
However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
The folder structure is not observed during playback.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.
Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**" section).

SRC / Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE.**

In certain cases, playback of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.
Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering-mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.
If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.
The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).
The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play audio files with ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav" and ".aac" file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.
Via the USB socket, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".cbr", ".vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.
File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. « ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.
In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select ISO 9660 standards level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard always be used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Only use USB memory sticks formatted to FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables to guarantee correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth® mobile telephone with the Bluetooth® hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® devices used. Refer to your telephone's user guide and your service provider to check which services you are able to access.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth® function on the telephone.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Search for a device**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.
In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), confirm that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone and validate.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears on the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu provides access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone is fully compatible, "**Calls list**", "**Consult the paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Managing connections

The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Select "Bluetooth **Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Indicates that a device is connected.

A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
– 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
– 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.

Indicates connection of the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Then select and confirm:

– "**Connect telephone**"/"**Disconnect telephone**" : to connect/disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
– "**Connect media player**"/"**Disconnect media player**" : to connect/disconnect streaming only.

– "**Connect telephone + media player**"/"**Disconnect telephone + media player**" : to connect/disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
– "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

i When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.
Select "**Call**".
Select "**Dial**".
Or
Select "**Directory**".
Or
Select "**Calls list**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.
Select "**End call**".
Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC / During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.

i The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

i With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:

– select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
– deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Telephone mode

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:

– select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
– deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Consultation call

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Directory

▲ ▼ To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

MENU To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.

Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

You can:

– "**Consult an entry**",
– "**Delete an entry**",
– "**Delete all entries**".

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.

Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR

Press this button.

i Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to avoid discharging the vehicle's battery.

► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The message "the audio system is overheated" is displayed onscreen.

To protect the installation if the ambient temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode, in which the volume may be decreased or the CD player stopped.

► Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).

For optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adjusted to different audio sources, resulting in audible differences when switching between sources (radio, CD, etc.).

► Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are appropriate to the sources being listened to. We recommend setting the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re

balance and Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in CD mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The wrong waveband is selected.

► Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.

Traffic announcement (TA) is shown but I receive no traffic information.

The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.

► Tune to a radio station that broadcasts traffic information.

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are inoperative (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the RDS function to allow the system to check for a more powerful transmitter in the area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The sound intermittently cuts out for 1 or 2 seconds in radio mode.

During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.

► Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon occurs too frequently and always on the same route.

Media

The Bluetooth connection is cut.

The battery in the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.

► Charge the battery in the peripheral device.

The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.

The USB stick has not been recognised, or may be corrupted.

► Reformat the USB memory stick.

The CD is systematically ejected or is not played.

The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system.

The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.

► Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.

► Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.

► Check the content in the case of a burned CD: read the recommendations in the "Audio" section.

Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be played by the audio system.

The CD audio quality is is poor.

The CD is scratched or of poor quality.

► Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.

The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.

► Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.

I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.

Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.

► Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

I am unable to access my voicemail.

Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.

► Call your voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.

I am unable to access my directory of contacts.

► Check the compatibility of your telephone.

You did not grant access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.
► Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.

I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.

Handset mode is activated.
► Deselect handset mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.

I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.

Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specificities in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.
► Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the telephone pairing from the system **and** the system pairing from the telephone, in order to view the compatibility of the telephones.

MyCitroën Play

Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

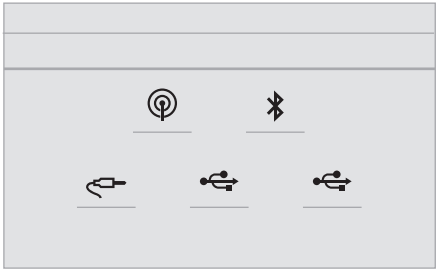
First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" and "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.
At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.
All touch-sensitive areas on the screen are white.
On pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page or by swiping the pages to the left or right with your finger.

Press in the shaded area to go back up a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
– Privacy status information.
– Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.
Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB Memory stick.
– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering-mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).

Confirm a selection.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2

Voice control:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press: smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

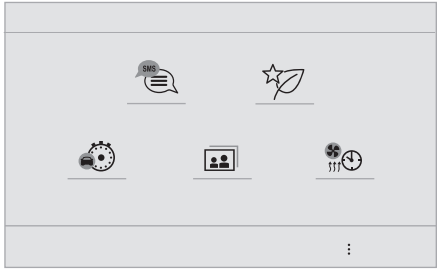
Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of detected stations.

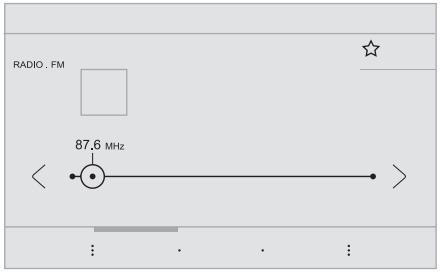
Menus

Applications



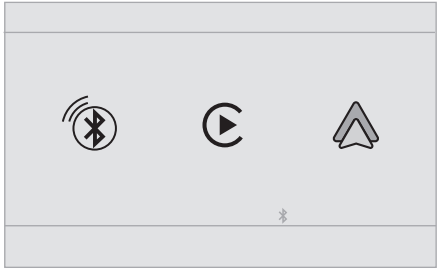
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



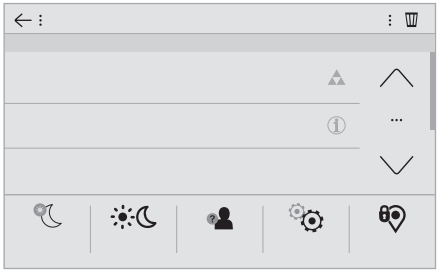
Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone



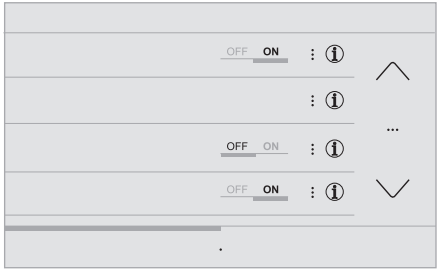
Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®. Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Settings



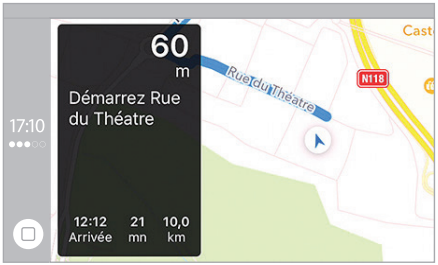
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Driving



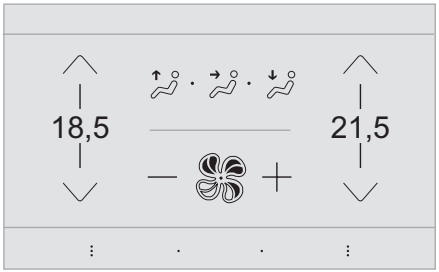
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Configure the navigation and select your destination via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

> ! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the bin to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz KHz Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Band**" to change waveband.
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or
Select a radio station or frequency.
Press "**Preset**".
Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**RDS**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

i RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**News**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Activate/deactivate "**TA**".
Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Audio settings**".

Select the "**Tone**", "**Balance**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the sound settings.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Band**" to select "**DAB band**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB". To minimise this time lag, storing radio stations in the "DAB" band is recommended.

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out when the digital signal becomes too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**SOURCES**" button.
Select the source.

BluetoothStreaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.
As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

> There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

> The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telephone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

> If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

The list of detected telephones is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),

– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),

– "**Mobile internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

> The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

> The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press the "Details" button for a paired device.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

+2s Make a long press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

> ! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
> Parking the vehicle.
> Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

+2s Or press and hold the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

+2s Press and hold the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

> i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Adjusting the brightness

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to restore the initial settings.

> ! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.
Press the "**Privacy**" tab,
or

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the private data mode.

Activate or deactivate:

– "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Data and vehicle position sharing**"

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

Press the back arrow to save the date.

Select the display format for the date.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation:" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of streaming files does not start.

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

► Start playback from the device.

Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.

► Check the Google Android Auto or Apple website to see which countries are supported.

The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, turn down ventilation, slow down, etc.).

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.

When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.

When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

MyCitroën Drive

GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:
– Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
– Using the smartphone.
– Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
– Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
– Changing the system settings and configuration.

AM and DAB radio are not available on Hybrid vehicles.

The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.
The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website.
The update procedure is also available there.

The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

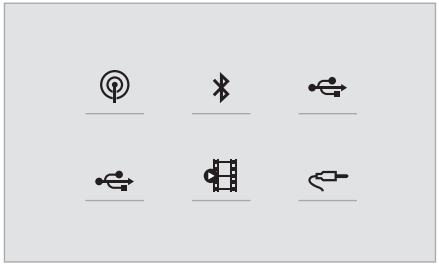
With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.
Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).
Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the rolling menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):
– Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
– Go directly to the audio source selection option, to view the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
– Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
– Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
Audio source selection (depending on equipment):
– FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
– Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
– USB memory stick.

– Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
– Video (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more.
The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering-mounted controls

Voice control:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice control.
Long press, voice commands from smartphone or CarPlay®, Android Auto via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of detected stations.

Menus

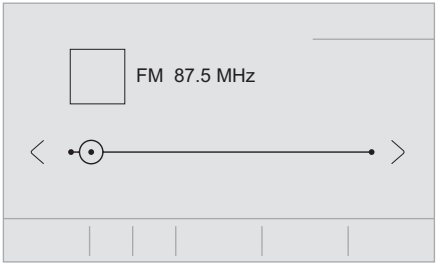
Connected navigation

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use real-time services, depending on equipment.

Applications

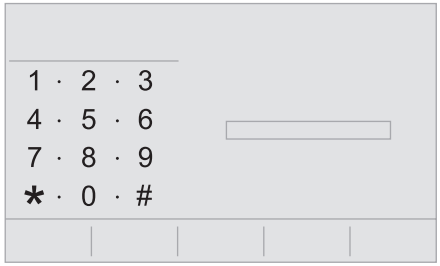
Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.
Check the status of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



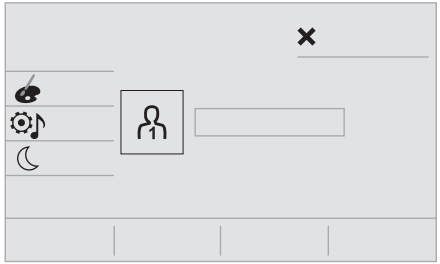
Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.

Telephone



Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings

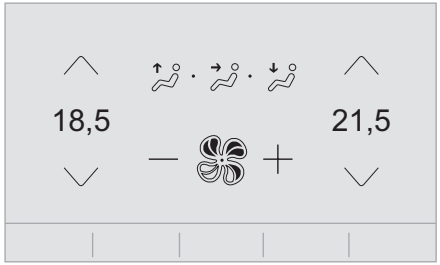


Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Voice commands

Steering wheel-mounted controls

Voice commands:
Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:
– **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
– always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
– for best results, closing the windows and sunroof is recommended, to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
– before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

First steps

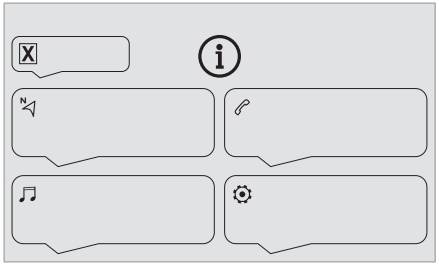
Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"Play artist Madonna"
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"Call David Miller"

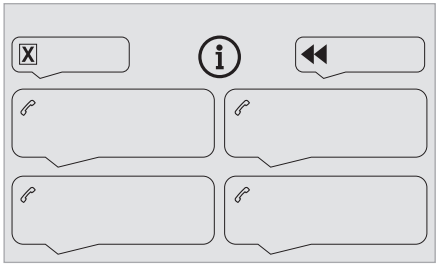
! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system

When voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and enabling voice-based interaction with the system.



A number of commands are available when a menu is selected.



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by

step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

Voice commands

Set dialogue mode as novice - expert
Select user 1 / Select profile John
Increase temperature
Decrease temperature

Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

"Navigation" voice commands

Voice commands

Navigate home
Navigate to work
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club
Navigate to contact, John Miller
Navigate to address 11 regent street, London

Help messages

To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".
To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Tell me the remaining distance
Tell me the remaining time
Tell me the arrival time
Stop route guidance

Help messages

You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".

Voice commands

Show POI "hotel" at the destination
Show nearby POI petrol station
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route

Help messages

To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".
To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

Voice commands

Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth - ...

Help messages

You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".

Voice commands

Tune to channel BBC Radio 2
Tune to 98.5 FM
Tune to preset number five

Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".

Voice commands

What's playing?

Help messages

To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Play song Hey Jude
Play artist Madonna
Play album Thriller

Help messages

I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

Voice commands

Call David Miller*
Call voicemail*
Display calls*

Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

"Text message" voice commands

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate the text, taking care to pause briefly between each word.
When you have finished, the voice recognition system will automatically generate an SMS.

Voice commands

Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late

Help messages

From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving
Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me

Help messages

Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

Voice commands

Listen to most recent message*

Help messages

To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Intuitive method:

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press "**Search…**".

Enter an address or the key words for the destination.

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

Or

Guided method:

In order to be able to use the navigation, you must enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" (suggestions are displayed automatically when you begin typing), then enter the "**Number**" using the virtual keypad, or select

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

an address from the "**Contact**" list or the address "**History**".

If you do not confirm the number, the navigation system will show one end of the street.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

Then

Select the "**Country**".

Select the keyboard “language”.

Change the keyboard "type" according to the selected "language": ABCDE; AZERTY; QWERTY or QWERTZ.

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**", and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or

Select "**See on map**" to choose the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**” tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**”.

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival on the map.

To "Home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**” tab.

Select "**Home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**” tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Guided method:

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", "**leisure**", "**Commercial**", "**Public**" or "**Geographic**” tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK Press "**OK**" to calculate the route.

Or

Intuitive method:

You can only select this method of using the service if a network connection is active; this may be either a "network connection provided by the vehicle", if you use the Citroën Connect Box solution, or else a "network connection provided by the user" via a smartphone,
In both cases, the system is automatically connected to the Internet, if network coverage permits.

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Search**".
Press on the mode shown in the bottom right of the screen (On-Board or Connected) to change the "Database".
Select the "Database" in "On-Board" mode (integrated into the map), or in "Connected" mode (connected to the Internet).
Press the back arrow to confirm.
Enter an address or the key words for the destination (POI).
Press "**OK**" to start the search.
Select the "**On the route**", "**Around the vehicle**" or "**At destination**" tab to refine your search.
Select the desired address to calculate the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Select the destination by pressing on the map.
Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.

A long press on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

To GPS coordinates

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.
Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.
Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.
Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.
A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.
Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.
Press this button to start guided navigation.
Or
Press this button to save the displayed address.
OR
Press this button to enter the "**Latitude**" value using the virtual keypad.
And
Press this button to enter the "**Longitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

Available in some countries.
TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are based on a European standard for traffic information broadcasting via the RDS system on FM radio, sending traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away when routes are calculated, to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable

legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

Connected navigation

Connected navigation connection

Depending on version, vehicle trim level and subscription to online services and options.

Network connection provided by the vehicle

With the Citroën Connect Box solution, the system is automatically connected to the Internet and connected services, and does not require the user to provide a connection via their smartphone.

OR

Network connection provided by the user

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Brand's website in your country.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

As processes and standards are constantly changing, we recommend you **update the smartphone operating system as well as the date and time on the smartphone and system**, to ensure that the communication process between the smartphone and the system functions correctly.

USB connection

Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection

WIFI Select a Wi-Fi network detected by the system and connect to it.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.

Press "**Notifications**".

Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" network Wi-Fi and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to establish a connection between the smartphone and the vehicle's system.

Usage restrictions:
With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only available with a Wi-Fi connection.
The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

Authorize sending information

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System configuration**".

Select the "**Private mode**" tab.

OR

Press "**Notifications**".

Press "**Private mode**".

THEN

Activate or deactivate:

– "**No data sharing except for company vehicles**".
– "**Only data sharing**"
– "**Sharing data and vehicle position**"

Settings specific to connected navigation

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select the "**Map**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:
– "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
– "**Guidance to final destination on foot**".
These settings must be configured for each profile.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.

Select the "**Alerts**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:

– "**Advise of car park nearby**".
– "**Filling station alert**".
– "**Risk areas alert**" then press the warning icon (triangle) to configure the alerts.
– "**Give an audible warning**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 1**".
– "**Advise proximity of POI 2**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm your selection.

The "Notifications", located in the upper bar, can be accessed at any time.

Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
– Weather,
– Filling stations,
– Car park,
– Traffic,
– POI local search.
A Danger area pack (optional).

Declaration: "Risk areas alert"

To send information about danger zones, select the option:**Allow declaration of danger zones**

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).

Select the "**Type**" option to select the type of "Danger area".

Select the **"Speed"** option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and send the information.

Displaying fuel information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired fuel.

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying charging station details

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Press "**POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**

Press one of the buttons to search for "**Stations**".

Activate/deactivate "**Stations**".

Press this button to display a secondary page.

Select the "**Settings**" tab.

Select the desired connector type.

Press "**OK**" to save.

Displaying weather information

Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Select "**View map**".

Select "**Weather**".

Press this button to display basic information.

Press this button to display detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay**® or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.

As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system**.

Connectivity

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the **CarPlay**® or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.
The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.
A message appears on the touch screen.
Read it and then confirm with the "**Authorise**" button.

Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "CarPlay®" function.

Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.

Install the "**Android Auto**" application on the smartphone via "Google Play".
The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Car Apps

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "**Connected Apps**" function.

Press "**Connected Apps**" to display the browser home page.

Select the country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the smartphone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

The Bluetooth function must be activated and the smartphone configured as "Visible to all".

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the smartphone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the smartphone.

If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the smartphone.

Procedure from the smartphone

Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the smartphone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Press "**Bluetooth connection**".
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected smartphones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen smartphone in the list.

Depending on the type of smartphone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the smartphone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the smartphone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (if the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.
Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".
Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.
Select a network.
Using the virtual keypad , enter the Wi-Fi network "**Key**" and "**Password**".
OK Press "**OK**" to establish the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Depending on equipment.
Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".
Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.
And/or
Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the system's network name and password.
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and to make all systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Manage connection**".
With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad. First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing the waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

To change the waveband, press "Band…", displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the

TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.
Select "**Announcements**".
Activate/deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".
OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.
Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press “Band …" at the top right of the screen to display the "**DAB**" waveband.

FM-DAB tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, “FM-DAB auto tracking" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
Select "**Radio settings**".
Select "**General**".
Activate/deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".
Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".
OK Press "**OK**".

i If "FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time lag of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB". To minimise this time lag, storing radio stations in the "DAB" band is recommended.

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**FM-DAB**" greyed out), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out when the digital signal becomes too weak.

Media

USB port

Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment
Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).
This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select the source.

Watching a video

Depending on equipment/Depending on version/Depending on country.
Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

> Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.

Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
Select "**SOURCES**".
Select **Video** to start the video.
To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.
The system can play video files in the MPEG-4 Part 2, MPEG-2, MPEG-1, H.264, H.263, VP8, WMV and RealVideo formats.

Streaming Bluetooth®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.
The Bluetooth profile must be activated.
First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the audio system.
If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

> Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

> The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).
> The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices and Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.
The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. “ ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

> We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

i The Bluetooth® function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telephone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

i If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth® function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of detected devices.
In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press "**Bluetooth search**".
Or
Select "**Search**".
The list of detected telephones is displayed.
Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
– "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
– "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
– "**Mobile internet data**".

i The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation, after first activating smartphone connection sharing.

Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.
Depending on the type of telephone, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

i The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

i The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).
To modify the connection profile:
Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.
Press the "Details" button.
Select one or more profiles.
Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

Using the telephone is strongly discouraged while driving.

Park the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering-mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call" to start the call.**

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or

Press and hold

the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Press the "**Telephone**" tab to enter the contact's telephone number(s).

Press the "**Address**" tab to enter the contact's address(es).

Press the "**Email**" tab to enter the contact's email address(es).

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press this button to sort contacts by Surname+first name or by First name+surname.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.
Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.
Press "**Call" to start the call.**
Press "**Play**" to listen to the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.
Some smartphones retrieve messages or email messages more slowly than others.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**Delayed**", "**My arrival**", "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab, enabling you to create new messages.
Press "**Create**" to write a new message.
Select the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Transfer**" to select one or more recipients.
Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email

Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.
Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.
Select the "**Incoming**", "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.
Select the message chosen in one of the lists.
Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Access to email messages depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Settings

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.
Select "**Audio settings**".
Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".
Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.

The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiances) as well as for **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".

The "**Position**" settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging© optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Configuring profiles

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.

Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to link "**Audio settings**" with it.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the selected profile's settings.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate:**Automatic scrolling**

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
Select "**Factory settings**" to restore the initial settings.

Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English and degrees Fahrenheit and deactivates summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press this button to set the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format for the date.

Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to set the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Select "**Color schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

I cannot enter the navigation address.

The address is not recognised.

► Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search…" button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.

The route calculation is not successful.

The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).

► Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.

I am not receiving "Danger zone" alerts.

You have not subscribed to the online services option.

► If you have subscribed to the option:

- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).

The POIs do not appear.

The POIs have not been selected.

► Set the zoom level to 200 metres (656 ft), or select POIs from the POI list.

The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.

The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.

► Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.

The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.

The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.

► Configure the "Traffic info" function in the route settings list (None, Manual or Automatic).

I am receiving a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.

As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.

► Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.

Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.

On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.

► Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).

In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.

This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.

On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.

► Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.

Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.

This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

My navigation is no longer connected.

During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.

► Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

The reception quality of the radio station being listened to gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (e.g. no sound, "87.5" MHz is displayed).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The aerial is missing or damaged (e.g. when going through a car wash or in an underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The surrounding area (e.g. hill, building, tunnel, underground car park, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS tracking mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press "Update list" in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

There may be an extended pause after inserting a USB stick.

The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.
This is perfectly normal.
Some characters in information about the currently playing media may not be displayed correctly.
The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.
► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.
The connected device does not automatically launch playback.
► Start playback from the device.
Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.
The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.
The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.
► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.
► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
► Deactivate then reactivate the telephone's Bluetooth function.
The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.
► You can check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.
► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.
Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.
Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.
► Check the list of supported countries via these websites: Google Android Auto or Apple.
The volume of the telephone connected via Bluetooth is too low.
The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.
► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.
► Reduce ambient noise (e.g. close the windows, reduce ventilation, slow down).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.
The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.
► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.
Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.
► Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system is not receiving SMS text messages.
Bluetooth mode does not allow SMS text messages to be sent to the system.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.
When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.
Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.
When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.
Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.
► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.
To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass, Treble, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.
► In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.
The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.
► Start the vehicle’s engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The date and time cannot be set.

Date and time settings are only available if satellite synchronisation is deactivated.
► Settings menu/Options/Date-Time Setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

Recording event data

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle.
You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook, or in the general terms and conditions of sale.
This information is also available online.

Vehicle operating data

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:
– Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
– Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:
– Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tyre pressures, battery charge status).
– Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lamps, brakes).
– System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
– Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
– For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.
In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.
When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary.
The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.
This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.
Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialised at any time.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:
– Seat and steering wheel position settings.
– Chassis and air conditioning settings.
– Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.
You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:
– Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
– Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
– Entered destinations.
– Data regarding the use of online services.
This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.
This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple®CarPlay®)

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system.
Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.
Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data. How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability the change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

Online services

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Exclusive services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided.
Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorisation, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement.
You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include the statutory functions and services such as the emergency or assistance call system.

Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject

to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the third-party services provided by the service provider in question.

180° rear vision 175

A

ABS 99
Accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) 182
Accessories 96
Access to the 3rd row 58, 60
Access to the spare wheel 210–211
Active Safety Brake 165, 167
AdBlue® 18, 198
AdBlue® tank 200
Additive, Diesel 196–197
Adjusting head restraints 50
Adjusting seat 48–50
Adjusting the air distribution 79–80
Adjusting the air flow 79–80
Adjusting the date 26, 260, 282
Adjusting the height and reach of
the steering wheel 52
Adjusting the lumbar support 48
Adjusting the seat angle 48, 50
Adjusting the seat belt height 104
Adjusting the temperature 79–80
Adjusting the time 26, 259, 283
Advanced Grip Control 101–102
Advice on care and maintenance 180, 202
Advice on driving 7, 134–135
Airbags 106–108, 110
Airbags, curtain 107–108
Airbags, front 106, 108, 110
Airbags, lateral 107–108
Air conditioning 77, 79, 79–80, 82
Air conditioning, digital 81
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 79–80
Air conditioning, manual 78–79, 81
Air intake 79–81
Air vents 77
Alarm 45–46
Android Auto connection 256, 274
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 99
Anti-pinch 74
Antitheft / Immobiliser 29
Apple CarPlay connection 256, 273
Applications 274
Area, loading 30, 37–38, 72
Armrest, front 50
Assistance call 97
Assistance, emergency braking 99, 167
Audible warning 99
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 243, 255, 278

B

Battery, 12 V 190, 196–197, 218–221
Battery, ancillaries 218
Battery, charging 220–221
Battery, remote control 36, 84
Bench seat, one-piece, fixed 57–59
Blind, panoramic roof 74
Blind spot monitoring system 171
Blind spot sensors 170
Blinds, side 73
BlueHDi 18, 196, 204
Bluetooth (hands-free) 243–244, 257, 279
Bluetooth (telephone) 257–258, 279–280
Bodywork 202
Bonnet 193
Boot 44
Boot lid 33–34, 35, 44
Brake discs 198
Brake lamps 216, 218
Brakes 198
Braking 148
Braking assistance system 99
Braking, automatic emergency 165, 167
Braking, dynamic emergency 141–142
Brightness 259
Bulbs 214
Bulbs (changing) 213, 216

C

Cable, audio 277
Cable, Jack 277
Capacity, fuel tank 177–178
Cap, fuel filler 177–178
Care of the bodywork 202
CD 242
CD, MP3 242
Central locking 28, 33, 37
Changing a bulb 213, 216, 218
Changing a bulb (side-hinged doors) 216

Changing a fuse 218
Changing a wheel 209
Changing a wiper blade 94–95
Changing the remote control battery 36
Changing to free-wheeling 200, 222
Charge level indicator (Electric) 20
Charging cable 183
Charging cable (Electric) 182
Charging connector (Electric) 181, 186, 188–189
Charging flap (Electric) 181, 186, 188–189
Charging system (Electric) 5, 8, 25, 179, 194
Charging the traction battery (Electric) 20, 179, 186, 188–189
Checking the engine oil level 18
Checking the levels 194–196
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 206, 208–209
Checks 194, 196–198
Checks, routine 196–198
Child lock 132–133
Child lock on rear windows 133
Children 105, 112, 120–121, 127, 130, 130–131
Children (safety) 132
Child seats 105, 108–112, 118, 118–119, 130
Child seats, conventional 111–112, 118, 118–119
Child seats, i-Size 130
Child seats, ISOFIX 120–121, 127, 130, 130–131
Cleaning (advice) 180, 202–203
Closing the boot 44
Closing the doors 28, 33, 43–44
Collision Risk Alert 165–166
Compressor, tyre inflation 206
Configuration, vehicle 24–25
Connected applications 274
Connection, Bluetooth 244, 257–258, 274–275, 279–280
Connection, Wi-Fi network 275
Connectivity 273
Consumption figures 25
Container, AdBlue® 199
Control, emergency boot release 35
Control, emergency door 28, 34–35
Control, heated seats 51
Control stalk, lighting 88
Control stalk, wipers 92–94
Control unit 182–183
Courtesy lamp 86
Courtesy lamp, front 86–87, 217
Courtesy lamp, rear 86–87, 217
Courtesy lamps 86–87, 217
Cover, load space 71
Crew cab, fixed 65–67
Crew cab, folding 67
Cruise control 154–157, 159–161
Cruise control, adaptive 157, 162–165
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 156–157
Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function 156–157

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio 240–241, 254, 277
Date (setting) 26, 260, 282
Daytime running lamps 89, 214–215
Deactivating the passenger airbag 106, 110
Deactivation of DSC (ESC) 100
Deadlocking 33–34
Deferred charging 26
Deferred charging (Electric) 25–26, 181, 186, 189
Defrosting 53, 81
Demisting 81
Demisting, rear 82
Demisting, rear screen 82
Dimensions 233
Dipstick 18, 194
Direction indicators 89, 214–216, 218
Display, head-up 153–154
Domestic charging 183
Domestic charging (Electric) 187–189, 231
Door pockets 69
Doors, rear 43–44
Doors, side 39
Doors, side-hinged 33–34, 43–44, 216
Driver’s attention warning 169
Drive selector (Electric) 147, 197
Driving 134–135
Driving aids camera (warnings) 152
Driving aids (recommendations) 152
Driving economically 7

Driving modes 148
Driving modes (Electric) 148–149
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 99–100, 102

E

EBFD 99
Eco-driving (advice) 7
ECO mode 149
Economy mode 190
Electric motor 5, 8, 25, 179, 191, 194, 218, 222, 231
Electric windows 47
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 99
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 99
Emergency call 97
Emergency warning lamps 96, 204
Emissions control system, SCR 19, 198
Energy economy mode 190
Energy flows 25
Energy recovery 20, 148
Engine 198
Engine compartment 194
Engine, Diesel 177, 194, 204, 226
Engines 225
Environment 7, 36, 84, 135
ESC (electronic stability control) 99

F

Fatigue detection 169
Filling the AdBlue® tank 196, 200
Filling the fuel tank 177–178
Filter, air 197
Filter, oil 197
Filter, particle 196–197
Filter, passenger compartment 77, 197
Finisher 213
Fitting a wheel 211–213
Fitting roof bars 192
Fittings, interior 68, 72
Fittings, rear 72
Flap, fuel filler 177–178
Flap, removable 53–55
Flashing indicators 89
Floor cab 218
Fluid, brake 195
Fluid, engine coolant 195
Fluid, power steering 195
Foglamp, rear 88, 216, 218
Foglamps, front 88, 215
Foglamps, rear 88
Frequency (radio) 276
Fuel 7, 177
Fuel consumption 7
Fuel tank 177
Fuses 218

G

Gauge, fuel 177–178
Gearbox, automatic 143–147, 197, 220
Gearbox, manual 143, 197
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 144–147
Gear lever, manual gearbox 143
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 144
Glove box 68
G.P.S. 270

H

Hazard warning lamps 96, 204
Headlamp adjustment 92
Headlamps, automatic dipping 90–91
Headlamps, automatic illumination 89–90
Headlamps, dipped beam 88, 214
Headlamps, halogen 214–215
Headlamps, main beam 88, 90, 214–215
Headlamps, Xenon 214
Head restraints, front 50
Head-up display 153–154
Heated bench seat 51
Heating 77–79, 81–84
Heating, additional 45, 83–84
Heating, programmable 26, 45, 83–85
High voltage 179
Hill start assist 142–143
Histogramme, fuel consumption 25–26

Horn 99

I

Ignition 138–139, 280
Ignition on 139
Immobiliser, electronic 136
Indicator, AdBlue® range 18
Indicator, coolant temperature 17–18
Indicator, engine oil level 18
Indicator lamps, operation 88
Indicators, direction 89
Inflating tyres 198, 236
Inflating tyres and accessories
(using the kit) 206, 208–209
Information, vehicle 287
Infrared camera 153
Instrument panel 9, 153
Intelligent Traction Control 101
Internet browser 271, 274
ISOFIX 127, 130, 130–131

J

Jack 209–210, 277
Jump starting 219

K

Key 28–29, 31–35
Key, electronic 28, 139
Keyless Entry and Starting 28–34, 137–138
Key not recognised 139
Key with remote control 33, 136
Kit, hands-free 243–244, 257, 279
Kit, puncture repair 206–209
Kit, temporary puncture repair 206–209

L

Labels 5, 57
Labels, identification 235
Lane Departure Warning System
(LDWS) 168–169
Leather (care) 203
Level, AdBlue® 196
Level, brake fluid 195
Level, Diesel additive 196–197
Level, engine coolant 17–18, 195
Level, engine oil 18, 194
Level, headlamp wash 93
Level, power steering fluid 195
Levels and checks 194–196
Level, screenwash fluid 93, 196
Lighting 88
Lighting dimmer 22
Lighting, exterior 88
Lighting, guide-me home 90
Lighting, interior 86, 92
Lighting, mood 92
Lighting, welcome 90
Loading 72, 191–192
Loading area fittings 71
Load reduction mode 190
Load restraint 71
Locating your vehicle 29
Locking 28–29, 33
Locking from the inside 37–38
Locking the doors 37
Low fuel level 177–178
Lumbar 48, 51–52

M

Mains socket (domestic network) 182
Maintenance (advice) 180, 202
Maintenance, routine 153, 196, 198
Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 152
Map reading lamps 86
Markings, identification 235
Massage function 51–52
Mat 68, 153
Memorising a speed 154–155
Menu 256
Menu, main 24, 238
Menus (audio) 251–252, 263–264
Menu short cuts 24
Messages 281
Messages, quick 281

Minimum traction battery charge level (Electric) 20
Mirror, rear view 53
Mirrors, door 52–53, 82, 170–171
Misfuel prevention 178
Mobile application 26, 85, 189
Moduwork 53–55
Motor, electric 138, 194, 231
Mountings, ISOFIX 118, 127, 130, 130–131
MP3 CD 242

N

Navigation 268–270
Navigation, connected 271–273
Net, cargo 53–55
Net, high load retaining 72–73
Number plate lamps 217

O

Obstacle detection 171
Oil change 194
Oil consumption 194
OIl, engine 194
On-board tools 205
Opening the bonnet 193
Opening the boot 28–29, 44
Opening the doors 28–29, 38–39
Opening to 180° 43–44

P

Pads, brake 198
Paint 202, 235
Paint colour code 235
Paint, matt 202
Panoramic glass sunroof 74
Parcel shelf, rear 69
Parking brake 140, 197
Parking brake, electric 140–142, 197
Parking sensors, audible and visual 171
Parking sensors, front 172
Parking sensors, rear 172
Passenger compartment temperature pre-conditioning (Electric) 26, 85
Pedestrian horn (Electric) 99, 135
Plates, identification 235
Player, Apple® 243, 255, 278
Player, MP3 CD 242
Player, USB 241, 254, 277
Port, USB 70, 241, 254, 256, 273, 277
Power 20
Power indicator (Electric) 8, 20
Power mode 149
Pressures, tyres 198, 206, 209, 236
Pre-tensioning seat belts 105
Priming pump 204
Priming the fuel system 204
Profiles 259, 282
Protecting children 106, 108–110, 112, 120–121, 127, 130, 130–131
Public fast charging station 182, 188
Puncture 206–207, 209

R

Radar (warnings) 152
Radio 239–240, 252–253, 276
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 240, 254, 277
Range, AdBlue® 18, 196
RDS 253, 276
Rear screen, demisting 82
Recharging the battery 220–221
Recharging the traction battery 183
Recharging the traction battery (Electric) 179, 186, 188–189
Recirculation, air 79–81
Recovery 222–224
Recovery of the vehicle 222–223
Reduction of electrical load 190
Regeneration of the particle filter 197
Regenerative braking (deceleration by engine braking) 147–148
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 151
Reinitialising the remote control 36
Reminder, key in ignition 138
Reminder, lighting on 89
Remote control 28–34, 136
Remotely operable functions (Electric) 26, 85, 189
Removing a wheel 211–213

Removing the mat 68
Replacing bulbs 213–214, 216, 218
Replacing fuses 218
Replacing the air filter 197
Replacing the oil filter 197
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 197
Reservoir, screenwash 196
Resetting the trip recorder 21–22
Reversing camera 153, 173, 175
Reversing lamp 216, 218
Roof bars 191–192
Roof rack 191
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 204

S

Safety, children 106, 108–110, 112, 120–121, 127, 130, 130–131
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 197
Screen, instrument panel 22
Screen menu map 256
Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 238
Screenwash 93
Screenwash, front 93
Screenwash, rear 94
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 19, 198
Seat and bench seat, rear, fixed 57, 59–61
Seat and bench seat, rear, on rails 57, 61–63
Seat angle 48
Seat belts 102–105, 111
Seat belts, rear 104
Seat, bench front, 2-seat 50, 104
Seat, rear bench 57
Seats, electric 49–50
Seats, front 48–50
Seats, heated 51
Seat(s), individual, rear, on rails 63–65, 104
Seats, rear 57–63, 109
Selector, gear 144
Sensors (warnings) 153
Serial number, vehicle 235
Service indicator 16
Servicing 16, 196, 198
Settings, equipment 24–25
Settings, system 259, 282
Sidelamps 88, 214–216, 218
Side repeater 216
Silent vehicle warning sound (Electric) . . . 99, 135
Sliding side door, electric 33–34, 38–41
Sliding side door, hands-free 42–43
Sliding side window 73
Smartphone 26
Snow chains 151, 190–191, 211
Snow chains, link 191, 211
Socket, 12 V accessory 69
Socket, 220 V 70
Socket, auxiliary 242, 255, 277
Socket, Jack 242, 277
Speed limiter 154–159
Speed limit recognition 155–156, 158, 160, 164–166
Speedometer 153
Sport mode 149
Stability control (ESC) 99, 101–102
Starting a Diesel engine 177
Starting the engine 136, 138
Starting the vehicle 137, 139, 143–147
Starting using another battery 139, 219
Station, radio 239, 252–253, 276
Stay, bonnet 193
Steering mounted controls, audio 238, 250, 263
Steering wheel, adjustment 52
Stickers, customising ~ Stickers, expressive 203
Stopping the vehicle 138–139, 144–147
Stop & Start 24, 78, 149–150, 177, 192, 197, 222
Storage 50, 56–57, 65–68
Storage compartments 68–69
Storage wells 65–67, 69
Stowing rings 71
Sunshine sensor 77
Super-fast charging (Electric) 188–189, 231
Suspension 198
Switching off the engine 136, 138
Synchronising the remote control 36

T

Table of weights 226
Table position 49
Table, retractable sliding 74–76
Tables, aircraft 69
Tables of engines 231
Table top, working 56–57

Tailgate rear screen 44
Tank, fuel 177–178
Technical data 226, 231
Telephone 243–246, 257–258, 279–281
Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition 246
Temperature, coolant 17–18
Textured Paint 202
Thermal comfort consumption indicator (Electric) 21
Thermal comfort equipment 21
Third brake lamp 216
Time (setting) 26, 259, 283
TMC (Traffic info) 270
Tool box 205
Tools 206, 209
Topping-up AdBlue® 200
Top Rear Vision 173
Total distance recorder 21–22
Touch screen 24–25, 85
Towbar 101, 191
Towed loads 225–226, 231
Towing another vehicle 223–224
Towing eye 223
Traction battery charge 183
Traction battery (Electric) 20, 25, 179–180, 231
Traction control (ASR) 99–100, 102
Traffic information (TA) 239
Traffic information (TMC) 270
Trailer 101, 191
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 101
Trajectory control systems 99
Triangle, warning 204
Trip computer 22–24
Trip distance recorder 21–22
Tyres 198, 236
Tyre under-inflation detection 150–151, 209, 213

U

Under-inflation (detection) 150
Unlocking 28–29, 31–32
Unlocking from the inside 37–38
Unlocking, selective 30–32
Unlocking the doors 37
Unlocking, total 30–32
Updating the date 26, 260, 282
Updating the time 26, 259, 283
USB 241, 254, 256, 273, 277

V

Vehicle data recording and privacy 287
Ventilation 77–79, 83–84
Video 278
Voice commands 265–268

W

Wallbox (Electric) 182
Warning and indicator lamps 11
Warning lamp, driver's seat belt not fastened 105
Warning lamps 11
Warning lamp, seat belts 105
Warnings and indicators 11
Washing 153
Washing (advice) 180, 202–203
Weights 225–226, 231
Welcome lighting 29
Wheel, spare 151, 198, 209–211, 213
Windows, rear 73
Windscreen, athermic 53
Windscreen wipers 93
Windscreen zones for toll/car park cards 53
Wiper blades (changing) 94–95
Wiper, rear 94
Wipers 92–94
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 93–94

Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End-of-Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproducing and translating this document, even partially, is strictly prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

4DCONCEPT
Groupe MAURY Imprimeur

PEFC 10-31-1282

IMPRIM'VERT®

Printed in the EU
12-21

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 2-10, boulevard de l'Europe - 78300 POISSY
www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. VERSAILLES : 642 050 199

CITROËN

ANG. 21K0C.0040

Owner's Manual

Introduction 6
Seats, restraints 8
Instruments and controls 10
Driving and operating 13
Vehicle care 17
Service and maintenance 24
Technical data 25
Index 28

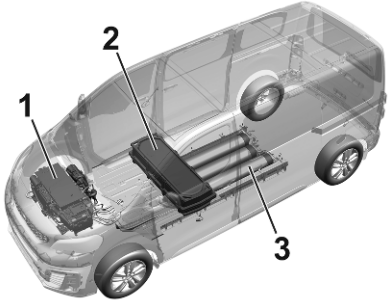
Introduction

Introduction

This Owner's Manual supplement provides all the necessary information about the fuel cell version. It is only valid in combination with the Owner's Manual for your vehicle and cannot be considered separately.

General information

The vehicle uses a mid-power hydrogen fuel cell system that is supported by a high voltage battery, in order to provide sufficient autonomy.



The fuel cell drivetrain contains of three subsystems:

- The fuel cell system (1) located in the engine compartment.
- The high voltage battery (2) located under the front seats.
- The hydrogen tank system (3) located under the load compartment.

The hydrogen reacts in the fuel cell with oxygen supplied from the ambient air. Water, heat and electrical energy emerge from this reaction.

Water and excess air are released through the exhaust, while the electrical energy is used to provide the electric motor with power.

Additionally to that, the high voltage battery can be charged via a charging port in order to guarantee sufficient autonomy in case of an empty hydrogen level. Electric energy is also provided by regenerative braking.

Seats, restraints

Child restraints **8**
Child restraint installation locations 8

Child restraints

Child restraint installation locations

As required by European regulations, this table gives the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved as well as the larger ISOFIX and i-Size child seats on seat positions equipped with ISOFIX mountings in the vehicle.

Yes : Suitable for fitment of the designated catecory of the child restraint system.

No : Not suitable for fitment of the designated catecory of the child restraint system.

Permissible options for fastening a child restraint system with a three-point seat belt

Child restraint system categories	Front passenger seat with activated airbag ON	Front passenger seat with deactivated airbag OFF
Universal belted child restraint system [1]	Yes [2] [3]	Yes [2] [4]
i-size child restraint system	NO	NO
Position equipped with a Top-tether fixing	NO	NO
Carry-cot (ISOFIX lateral facing child restraint system) ISOFIX child restraint fixture: L1, L2	NO	NO
ISOFIX rearward facing child restraint system	NO	NO
ISOFIX forward facing child restraint system	NO	NO
Booster seat - full width: B3	Yes [2] [5] [6]	NO

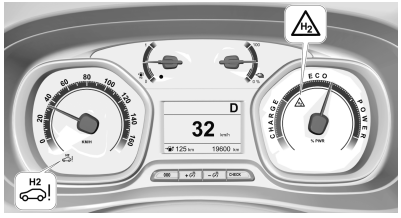
1) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt. Applies to all stature and mass groups.
2) For a seat with height adjustment, set it to the highest and fully back longitudinal position.
3) Only a forward facing child restraint system is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger's airbag activated ON.
4) To install a rearward facing child restraint system at this seat position, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated OFF.
5) Seat not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.
6) Set the headrest to the lowest position.

Instruments and controls

Warning lights, gauges and indicators **10**
Instrument cluster 10
Hydrogen gauge 10
Hydrogen leakage 11
Fuel cell system fault 11
Displays **11**
Driver Information Centre 11

Warning lights, gauges and indicators

Instrument cluster



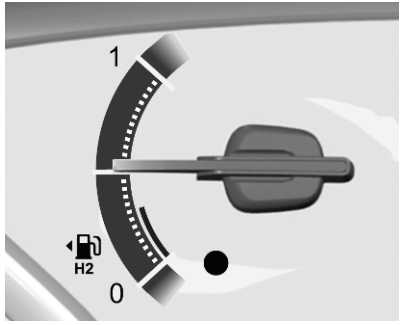
Overview

H2 Hydrogen leakage ⇨ 11

H2 Fuel cell system fault ⇨ 11

H2 ● Low hydrogen level ⇨ 10

Hydrogen gauge



Displays the hydrogen level in the tank.

If the control indicator ● illuminates yellow, refuel the tank immediately.

If additionally the charging level of the high voltage battery is too low, illuminates yellow.

Refueling ⇨ 15.

Charging ⇨ 14.

Hydrogen leakage

illuminates red together with and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

A hydrogen leak has been detected.

Do not park or transport the vehicle indoors, such as a garage or the like.

⚠ Warning
Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Fuel cell system fault

! and are illuminated yellow and a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

The range of the vehicle might be reduced. In order to enable the continuation of the journey, the high voltage battery will be used.

Therefore, ensure that the charging level of the high voltage battery is high enough.

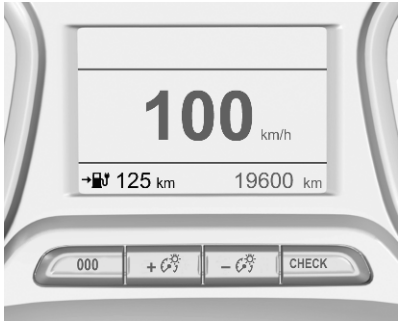
Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Charging ⇨ 14.

Displays

Driver Information Centre

Combined autonomy information menu



The combined autonomy (fuel cell system and high voltage battery) of the vehicle is shown in this menu.

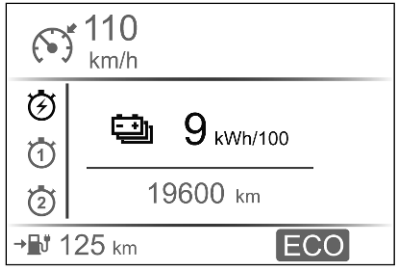
The autonomy is calculated from current hydrogen level, the charging level of the high voltage battery and from the current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling or charging, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

Trip / information menus

Differerent pages with combined information can be selected.

Information page



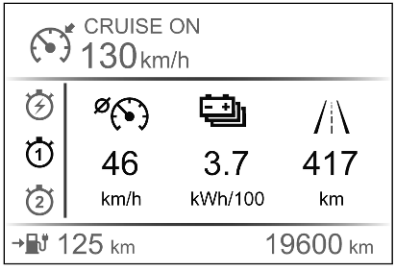
Instantaneous consumption

Display of the instantaneous consumption of combined energy (fuel cell and high voltage battery).

Odometer

The recorded overall distance.

Trip pages



To reset, press **000** for a few seconds.

Average speed

Display of average speed.

Average consumption

Display of the average consumption of combined energy (fuel cell and high voltage battery). After a reset it starts with a default value.

Trip odometer

The recorded distance since the reset.

Driving and operating

Starting and operating **13**
Starting the engine 13
Parking 13
Driver assistance systems **13**
Parking assist 13
Charging **14**
General information 14
Fuel **14**
Hydrogen 14
Refuelling 15

Starting and operating

Starting the engine

Note
The operating temperature of the vehicle is between -20 °C and +50 °C.

Vehicle operation is restricted to this ambient temperature range.

Parking

Note
Please note that the vehicle may emit noises after the engine has been switched off. This is normal and does not indicate any damage.

Driver assistance systems

Parking assist

Note
If a coupling ball bar is attached to the vehicle, the detection zone of the parking sensors is disturbed and they do not operate properly.

Deactivate the parking assist everytime a coupling ball bar is attached to the vehicle.

Charging

General information

Electric power consumption and range

The electric power consumption and the vehicle's range by using only the high voltage battery were not available at time of printing.

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The determination of electric power consumption is regulated by directive R (EC) No. 715/2007 and No. 2017/1151 (in the latest applicable version).

Charging

In order to ensure the compatibility of plug and outlet, different labels are used. The labels are located on the inside of the vehicle's charging port flap. Make sure to connect only a cable of the same type.

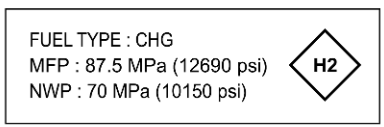
Type 2 plug or outlet used for AC charging

Note
The system does not allow the simultaneous refuelling and charging of the vehicle.

Fuel

Hydrogen

Only use hydrogen fuel that complies with European standards DIN EN 17124 or ISO 14687 or equivalent.



A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed hydrogen fuel type, as well as the maximum fueling pressure **(MFP)** and the nominal working pressure **(NWP)**.

In Europe the pump nozzles of the filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

Expiring date hydrogen tanks

⚠ Danger

Never refuel the hydrogen tanks after the indicated expiring date.

DO NOT REFUEL
AFTER YYYY.MM

The expiring date of the hydrogen tanks is indicated on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Refuelling

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Never refuel the vehicle after an accident. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

⚠ Warning

Only use fueling stations which comply with the fueling standard SAE J2601 or EN 17127.

Note
The system does not allow the simultaneous refuelling and charging of the vehicle.

Note
Once refuelling has been enabled by the system, the refuelling of the vehicle must be started within five minutes. If this time has been expired, the refuelling process is cancelled.

In this case, close the fuel filler flap, if it has been opened before, and start refueling process again.

Before refuelling

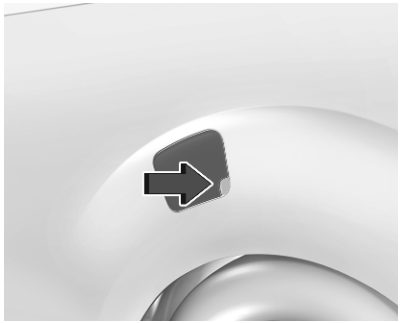
In order to start the refuelling, following preconditions must be fullfilled:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition is switched off.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is in position **P**.

Refuelling

1. Press ⛽. The system performs a check of the preconditions. This may take up to 30 seconds. If the preconditions have been fullfilled,

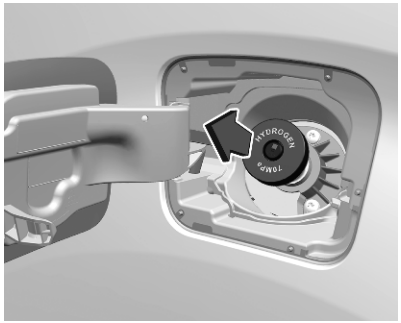
the fuel filler flap is then unlocked and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



2. Open the fuel filler flap by pulling on the right bottom corner.

Note
If the fuel filler flap has been closed again by mistake, it has to be re-opened within one minute, otherwise the refueling process needs to be started again.

The fuel filler flap is located at left rear side of the vehicle.



3. Remove the fuel filler cap and refuel the vehicle by following the instructions given by the filling station.
4. After refuelling, reinsert the fuel filler cap, close the fuel filler flap and allow it to engage.

Note
The fuel filler flap must be properly closed, otherwise the system will not allow the vehicle to move off.

Vehicle care

Vehicle checks **17**
Fuel cell system coolant 17
Engine coolant 17
Electrical system **18**
Fuses 18
Engine compartment fuse box ... 19
Vehicle tools **20**
Tools 20
Wheels and tyres **21**
Spare wheel 21
Jump starting **21**

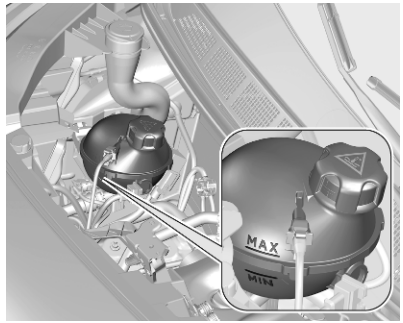
Vehicle checks

Fuel cell system coolant

Coolant level

Caution
The coolant reservoir may contain traces of hydrogen which is normal. Using the wrong coolant can cause severe damages to the fuel cell system. Only trained service personnel are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and to top up coolant.

Caution
A too low coolant level can cause damage to the fuel cell system.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. If the cooling level is too low, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Engine coolant

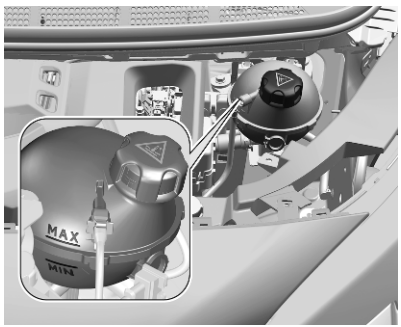
The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37 °C.

Caution
Only use approved antifreeze.

Coolant level

Caution

A too low coolant level can cause engine damage.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. Top up if the level is low.

⚠Warning

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Electrical system

Fuses

Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse.

There is a fuse box in the engine compartment.

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire.

Caution

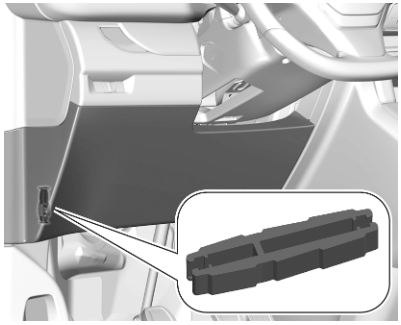
Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

Some functions are protected by several fuses.

Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.

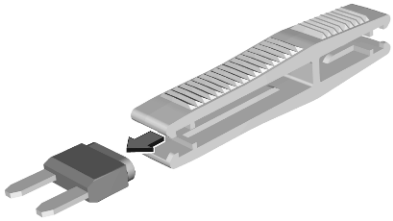
Fuse extractor

A fuse extractor may be located behind the passenger compartment fuse box cover:



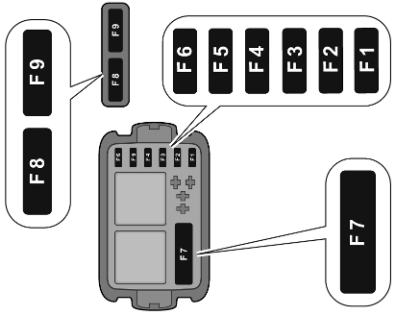
Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right. Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.

The extractor has two sides, each side is designed for a different type of fuses.



Grab the fuse with the fuse extractor and withdraw the fuse.

Engine compartment fuse box



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover and remove it.

No.	Circuit
1	Fuel flap / DCDC converter
2	Three way valve
3	Fuel cell system
4	Fuel cell propulsion system controller

No.	Circuit
5	Fuel cell propulsion system controller
6	H2 sensors
7	Main fuse
8	High temperature pump
9	Relays / RDI sensor / Refuel button

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and lock it.

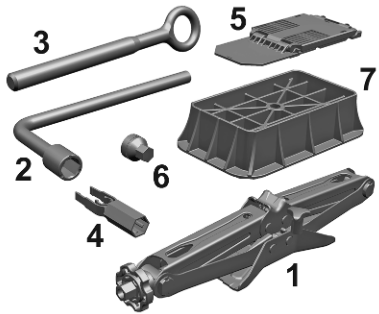
If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, malfunction may occur.

Vehicle tools

Tools

The tools are located in the load compartment.

Vehicles with spare wheel



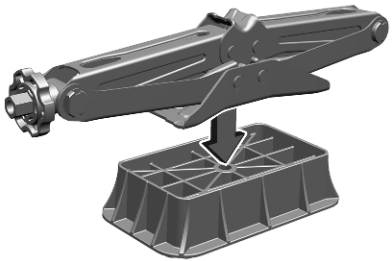
- Jack (1)
- Wheel wrench (2)
- Towing eye (3)
- Wheel bolt cover remover (4)
- Chock (5)
- Adapter for the locking wheel nuts (6)
- Jack base (7)

Vehicles without spare wheel

The bag contains the tyre repair kit and is located behind the driver's seat.

Wheels and tyres

Spare wheel



In order to use the jack properly, place it first on the jack base before lifting the vehicle.

Jump starting

Do not start with quick charger.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Caution

Never jump start another vehicle with an electric vehicle.

⚠Warning

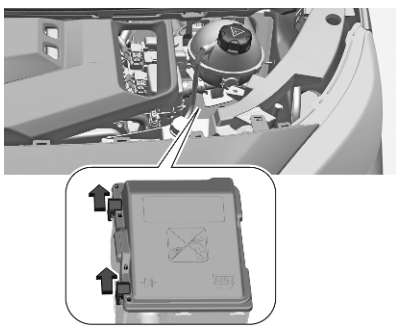
Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

⚠Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a battery.
- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 V). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm^2 (25 mm^2 for diesel engines).

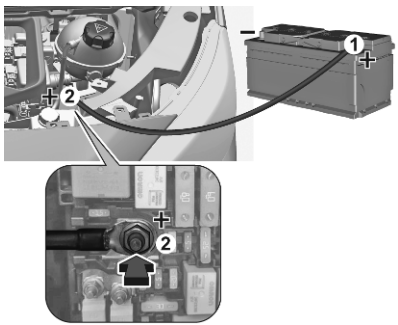
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in **P**.



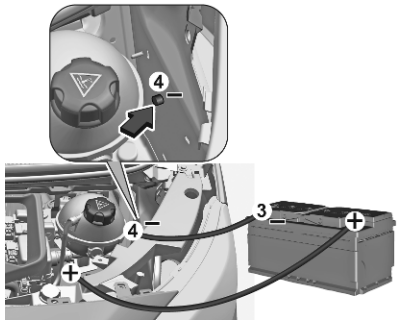
Disengage the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment to access the positive terminal of the vehicle battery.

Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal (**1**) of the booster battery.



2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal (**2**) of the discharged battery.
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal (**3**) of the booster battery.



4. Connect the other end of the black lead to the vehicle grounding point (**4**) of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After 5 minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of 1 minute.

3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers e.g. headlights, heated rear window of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

Service and maintenance

General information **24**
Service information 24

General information

Service information

The service interval for the fuel cell vehicle is 15,000 km or one year, whichever comes first.

Technical data

Vehicle data **26**
Engine data 26
Capacities 26
Tyre pressures 26

Vehicle data

Engine data

	Fuel cell vehicle
Engine power [kW]	100
Fuel cell power [kW]	45
Fuel type	Hydrogen
Combined range (high voltage battery and fuel cell)	approx. 400 km

Capacities

Hydrogen tanks

Hydrogen, refilling quantity [kg]	4.4

High voltage battery

Battery capacity [kWh]	10.5

Tyre pressures

Regarding tyre pressures for a specific vehicle, refer to the tyre pressure information label on the B-pillar.

The tyre pressure information label indicates the original equipment tyres and the correspondent tyre pressures.

Increased payload

Tyres	Vehicle with up to 3 people		With full load	
	front	rear	front	rear
	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
215/65 R16	300/3.0 (44)	300/3.0 (44)	300/3.0 (44)	370/3.7 (54)
215/60 R17	300/3.0 (44)	300/3.0 (44)	300/3.0 (44)	370/3.7 (54)

Index

C
Capacities 26
Charging..... 14
Child restraint installation locations 8

D
Driver Information Centre..... 11

E
Electrical system..... 18
Electric power consumption..... 14
Electric range..... 14
Engine compartment fuse box 19
Engine coolant 17
Engine data 26

F
Fuel cell system coolant..... 17
Fuel cell system fault..... 11
Fuses 18

G
General information..... 14

H
Hydrogen..... 14
Hydrogen gauge..... 10
Hydrogen leakage..... 11

I
Instrument cluster 10
Introduction 6

J
Jump starting 21

P
Parking 13
Parking assist 13

R
Refuelling 15

S
Service..... 24
Service information 24
Spare wheel 21
Starting the engine 13

T
Tools 20
Tyre pressures 26

V
Vehicle jack..... 20
Vehicle tools..... 20